THE VVORLDE,

OR

An hiſtoricall deſcription of the *moſt famous kingdomes and* common-weales *therein.*

Relating their ſcituations, manners, cuſtomes, ciuill gouernment, and *other memorable* matters.

Tranſlated into Engliſh, and inlarged.

Imprinted at London by Edm. Bollifant, *for Iohn Iaggard.*

1601.

The Kingdomes, Prouinces, *and common-weales* handled herein.

A

Abruzzo 92
Afrike 12 34
Ancona 82
Angleſey 26
Aragan 181
Arezzo 88
Aſcoli 82
Aſia 11.34.52
Auſtrich 100

B

Baſilica 92
Belgia 30
Bohemia 101
Biſhop of Rome 82
Braſil 40
Breſcia 99
Brunduſe 91

C

Calabria 89
Calecute 185
Cambaia 173
Campagnia 89
China 160
Conſtantinople 68
Cornwal 25

D

Denmarke 109

E

England 23.47
Europe 10.33.52

F

Ferrara 82
Florence 86
France 13.46

G

Genoa 81.93
Germanie 64.73

I

Iapan 198
Italie 79
Ireland 25

L

Liguria 93
Liuonia 120
Lucca 86
Lumbardy 98

M

Macerata 82
Macin 181
Man 26
Magellanica 13
Malſi 92
Mexicana 13
Mexico 37
Millain 99
Mogor 150
Monfredonia 92
Monomotapa 221
Moſcouie 130

N

Naples 89
Narſinga 181
New world 36
Noua Hiſpania 37

O

Otranto 90

P

Padoa 100
Parma 82
Perſia 62.189
Peru 37
Pernana 13
Piſa 86
Philippina 40
Placentia 8
Podalia 121
Poland 63.119.142
Portugal 34.48.62
Preſter Iohn 63
Pruſia 120
Puglia 92

R

Romagnia 82
Romain empire 88
Ruſsia 121

S

Sienna 51
Scotland 23
Siam 172
Simogithia 101
Spaine 33.65.81
Sweueland 113.141
Swizzerland 103

T

Tarent 91
Tartaria 140.142
Turke 52
Tuſcan 82.85

V

Vdia 173
Venice 45.65.81.94
Vmbria 82

W

Wales 24
Weight 26

X

Xeriffe 63

TO THE RIGHT HONORABLE EDWARD EARLE of Worceſter, LORD of *Chepſtoll, Ragland and Gower, Knight* of the moſt noble order of the Garter, and Maſter of the Horſe to the *Queenes moſt excellent Maieſtie.*

RIGHT HONORABLE,

Auing with an vnskilful hand taught this booke to ſpeake Engliſh, I thought that I ſhould be like an euill player marring the laſt act of the tragedie, or a careleſſe pilot drowning the ſhip in the hauen, if I ventured it to the diuers cenſures of men, before it were entruſted to the patronage of ſome ſuch authoritie, as might reſtraine and binde the ouerflowings of other mens more hard opinion. For although the worthines of the ſubiect might worke in mee an ouerweening hope of his kinde entertainment; yet I cannot ſatisfie my ſelfe, vnleſſe it paſſe vnder the tutele and protection of ſome one, whoſe fauour may (like the vertical ſunne) abate all ſhadowes, either of enuy or diſgrace, which are in this (ſtill worſe and worſe) age of the world readie to diſcountenance the fruites of any mans labour. Wherefore conſidering with my ſelfe, where to beſtow it, I was emboldened by the inducement of

of diuers reaſons to preſume on your Lordſhip, aſcertaining my ſelfe, that the honorable vertues, which haue wound you into the liking of all men, haue ſetled ſo good an impreſſion, as is forcible ynough to make that ſeeme commendable, which is graced by your Honors name onely. And for this reſpect amongſt infinite others here for ſpeciall reaſons ſilenced, in hope of fauorable acceptance, I moſt humbly preſent it to your Honor, challenging to my ſelfe nothing but the imperfections in the harſh compoſure, and conueiance of the ſtile, retaining yet (as I truſt) the former ſtrength and ſubſtance. If your L. vouchſafe to receiue it, it may be that (although in the peruſall it cannot enforme your Honor any thing, which you were ignorant of) yet it may confirme that, which otherwiſe your Honor doubted; or make it cleerer by deliuering the circumſtances in more particular termes. Onely thus much (vnder leaue of a better iudgement) I dare ſay, that there is no booke extant touching the ſame argument, which can æqualize it, either for ſoundnes in iudicially cenſuring; truth in ſincerely relating; or compendiouſnes in briefing ſuch varietie of matter to ſo ſmall a volume. And here although I could according to the vſuall forme of epiſtles indeuour a draught of your moſt honorable praiſes; yet knowing, that it is but tediouſnes, where vertue is loued for the onely inner contentment, I put a period to theſe lines, and moſt humbly crauing pardon take leaue.

Your Honors deuoted
in all humble ſeruiceablenes,

I. R.

Of the World, and the greateſt Princes therein.

HAuing vndertaken to diſcourſe of the greateſt Princes and States, which are at this day in the World: I thought I could do no leſſe, then firſt to make a briefe relation concerning the cauſes, from whence the enlarging & greatnes of thoſe eſtates do proceed. For to giue an account of thoſe occurrances which daily paſſe in the world, is a thing eaſie to him that intertaineth any intelligence, and will beſtow any labour thereabouts: but to know the true reaſons, whereby one kingdome or ſtate becommeth greater then another, deſerueth the commendation of wit and iudgement. We will therefore ſet downe, that a Prince or ſtate obtaineth rule and dominion ouer another, by ſome ſurpluſage and aduantage; and that this aduantage ariſeth either from *multitudes of men*; or from their *valour* (conſiſting in the qualitie of their weapons, and the maner of their vſe) from *Riches*, the opportunitie of *ſcituation*, or from *occaſions*.

The enlarging of Dominion is, the vniting and eſtabliſhing of diuers territories vnder one ſoueraigntie and gouernment; whereunto is neceſſarilie required ſuch numbers of men, as may exceed the caſuall dangers and doubtfull chances incident to all warlike enterpriſes. For ſmall numbers are ſoone conſumed by plague, oppreſſed by a more mightie enimie, *Numbers of men.*

ouerthrowne in one battell, or conſumed by a long warre: to which inconueniences great numbers and populous nations are not ſo much ſubiect. By the aduantage heereof the *Barbarians*, the *Ægyptians*, the *Aſſirians* and the *Perſians* haue for the moſt part brought their attempts to happy ende. The *Romans* (if in reſpect of their Honor) they did not ordinarily vſe huge armies, yet they alwaies preuailed by reaſon of their populous territories, in the continuance of their wars, being thereby able the ſecond and third time to reenforce their legions, and with freſh ſupplies to ouercome their enimies being weakened with ouercomming. And to multiplie and maintaine theſe numbers, they haue ſometimes receiued into their territories euen their verie enimies, and againe at other times haue ſent foorth Colonies of their owne people, as it were branches of Rome, and nurſeries of the Romaine people. By meanes whereof, and other their policies, they grew to ſuch multitudes, that in the eight yeere of the raigne of the emperour *Claudius*, the people were numbred to be ſixe millions, being ſo manie, as at this preſent are not to be founde at one time within the boundes of Italy: whereby they became conquerors of the parts of the world then knowne; a conqueſt vndertaken by them as much in regard of their numbers as of their valour.

Valour. True valour doth partly conſiſt in iudicious apprehenſion (whereby both conuenient opportunities are diſcerned and intertained; and all difficulties diſcouered and preuented:) and partly in the foreward reſolution of the minde: by coniunction of which two vertues, great enterpriſes are vndertaken with good ſucceſſe, diuers dangers made light, and waightie attempts brought to happie ends. Of theſe two I doe not know which to prefer as moſt neceſſarie and of greateſt importance. But moſt certaine it is, that the one without the other, little auaileth to the atchieuing of any matter woorthie reputation. For wiſedome without courage, may rather be termed ſubtiltie, then iudicious cariage: and courage without diſcretion is rather furious raſhneſſe, then true valour; neither let any man ſuppoſe that from wilineſſe without force, nor from force without iudgement, can proceed any proiect of

of woorthie conſideration. For all deſſeignes that haue in them greatneſſe, haue alſo in them difficultie and hardneſſe, and to maſter vneaſie actions, it is neceſſary both to vſe iudgement to foreſee dangers (for foreſight maketh them leſſe) and courage to vndertake and ouercome them. Theſe two ioyned in one man, or in one nation, are apt meanes to raiſe their fortunes aboue their neighbours; as we ſee amongſt birdes, the eagle; amongſt beaſts, the lion; and amongſt fiſhes, the Dolphin (in whom do appeere but ſome ſhadows of wit and courage) are therefore eſteemed, as it were, princes aboue other creatures.

But if it be ſo that true iudgement cannot be ſeuered from true valour, yet ordinarily the one doth appeere more diſcernable from the other in diuers ſubiects. For we may note in *Philip* king of the Macedons, and in *Amilcar* the Carthaginian, great foreſight and witte, and in *Alexander* and *Hanibal* (their ſonnes) courage and valour: In *Fabius* iudicious warineſſe, in *Marcellus* couragious forwardnes. Both which were alike fearefull to the valiant *Hannibal*. Yet ſome actions are better dealt in with the one, then with the other. For generally to conquer and winne, courage is more auaileable then wit; but to eſtabliſh and keepe that which is gotten, diſcretion is more to be deſired, then it; as may well be diſcerned in the Spaniards, who haue ſurer ſetled themſelues in that which they gained by their warines and iudgement, then did the French by their furie and hazard.

But if any man ſhould vrge me to ſpeake my opinion whether courage or witte be more neceſſarily to be required: I would readily giue my conſent with courage. My reaſon is, that wiſedome is giuen but to fewe, and that muſt be gotten to by long time and ſtudie, whereas courage is by diuers meanes, and vpon ſodaine caſualties imparted & diſperſed in the mindes of many: then thoſe many hauing to deale with thoſe fewe, it will be an eaſie matter to vanquiſh and ouercome them. As we read of the *Gothes*, the *Vandals*, the *Tartarians*, and the *Turkes*, who with courage onely haue atchieued great conqueſts, and haue brought to paſſe ſuch enterpriſes, as a man woulde haue thought vnpoſſible: The reaſon

whereof is, that their ſodaine and ſpeedy moouings and their vnexpected boldnes, hath confounded the counſels, and amazed the iudgements of the wiſe. Beſides in ſodaine hurliburlies of warre it is commonly ſeene, that courage affoords more reliefe then policie; for that in ſuch caſes reaſon is daſhed, and and men ſtande as it were amazed at the greatnes of the preſent danger, wheras courage doth oftentimes gather ſtrength in extreme diſpaire.

Vna ſalus victis nullam ſperare ſalutem.

And it is commonly ſeene, that thoſe people, which are more commended for their witte and policie, then for their courage and valour, haue giuen place to thoſe, which are more eſteemed for their reſolution, then for their skilfulneſſe: as the Greekes and the Macedons doe at this day to the Turkes: the *Gauls* of old, to the *French*: the *Egyptians*, to the *Perſians*, the *Saracens*, and other nations: the *Caldeans*, to the *Perſians*, and *Parthians*. Yea, it is the receiued opinion that the *French* did range *Italy* at their pleaſure vnder *Charles* the eight, and gaue them the Law, becauſe in thoſe times, the Italian princes did wholie giue themſelues to the ſtudie of good letters. Heereupon it commeth to paſſe, that thoſe ſtates which conſiſt of a people, whereof one part is inclined to witte and policie, and another part to fierceneſſe and boldneſſe, do for the moſt part liue in little quiet; Such are thoſe countries, whereof one part is plaine and fruitefull, and the other mountanous and barren: becauſe the inhabitants of the plaine countrey, by reaſon of the commodities thereof, and the eaſineſſe of commerce and traffike, and by the experience thereof enſuing, are vſually circumſpect and wittie; whereas on the contrarie the inhabitants of mountaines, by reaſon of the ſharpenes of the place which doth harden them, and by the bluntnes of their maners, which doth accompanie them, they become of great courage and ſtubborne mindes. Such is *Spaine*, where the Biskains, the Aragons and other people inhabiting the mountaines, and remote places of the kingdome, are of ſuch condition, that by reaſon of their many priuiledges, they liue vnder a king, but as if they were at libertie and in a free ſtate: whereas the Caſtilians and Andoluzians, whoſe countrie is more

plaine

plaine and fruitefull, applie themſelues willingly to the pleaſure and command of their king and ſoueraigne. Neither can there be alleaged a truer reaſon of the troubles of the kingdome of Naples, then the different qualities of the countrie, as ſome mountaine, ſome plaine, ſome fruitefull, ſome rockie, of which it doth altogither conſiſt, and wherevpon doth proceed the difference of mindes and maners in the inhabitants, as ſome rude, ſome ſauage, ſome curteous and ciuill: whereby they continually diſagreeing amongſt themſelues, haue oftentimes fallen togither by the eares, and one hath betaken himſelfe to the protection of one prince, and another to the tuition of another prince. By the ſame reaſon Lumbardie, becauſe it doth conſiſt of pleaſant champian, is more quiet and at peace, then Thuſcan which is diuided into mountaines and vallties. Alſo in a citie where the citizens are of equall courage and witte, peace and quiet is hardly maintained: which doth appeere by Florence and Genua, cities repleniſhed with men, excellent for their policie and greatnes of minde, and therefore little concord to be founde amongſt them. On the contrarie, the countries which are plaine and of an vniforme ſcite, are, by reaſon of the conformitie of their manners eaſily reduced and kept vnder one gouernment without any difficultie: as Polonia, Moſcouia, Littuania, Hungarie, Egypt, Fraunce, and Bohemia.

Moreouer there is a certeine fiercenes, or rather furie, which comes neere to a kind of valour: for that exceſſe of boldnes (wherewith the Gals, and afterwards the Frenchmen) haue atchieued notable exploits is in ſome ſort commendable.

But by reaſon, violence is not of continuance, they haue had better ſucceſſe in getting and conquering, then in mainteining and keeping their conqueſts. For in an aſſault, raſhneſſe is much auaileable, but in preſeruing and defending, it hurteth more then profiteth. Wherefore moderation is ſaid to be the mother of continuance of ſtates and kingdomes.

The Swiſſers were notable herein, eſpecially in the wars of Nouar, in ſo much as *Iames* Triuulzie reporteth, that their battell ſeemed to be not of ordinarie men, but rather of Gyants. Neither hath any nation euer ſhewed more fierceneſſe, and

hath

hath vſed more boldneſſe and fury, then the Portugales, whoſe viages beyond the cape of Good Hope, and beyond the ſtraits of Sincapura, their conqueſts of Ormus, of Goa, of Malacca, and the Moluccos, the defence of Cochin, of Diu, of Chaul, & of Goa, are more true then in reaſon likely.

Weapons. The qualities of the weapons, and the order of diſcipline, are important inſtruments of this valor. The Macedons atchieued great conqueſts, by meanes of their pikes, and by diſpoſing of their ſquadrons; The Romaines, by the means of their darts. The Parthians with their ſteele-bowes, the Engliſh with their long bowes; and the Spaniards, in the *new world*, with the horſe and hargabuſe.

Money. Money is an aduantage of great importance, foraſmuch as there is nothing more neceſſary in warres, or of more vſe in peace. By meanes heereof the Florentines became Lords of a great part of Thuſcan: They bought many citties: They freed themſelues from the incurſions of diuers enemies: they mainteined the warres many yeeres againſt the Piſans, and againſt the proweſſe of thoſe peoples, and the power of thoſe princes which did aide them, and at the laſt brought that war to good end. By meanes hereof, the Venetians made themſelues Lords of Lumbardie, and haue endured the force of the king of Hungarie, the Archduke of Auſtria and of diuers other princes. Whereby it doth appeere that mony worketh two notable effects for the continuing the greatneſſe of kingdomes and ſtates. The one is, to prouide and gather together force, and the ſame being gotten together, to vphould and mainteine, with ſupply of ſouldiers, victualls, munition and armes. The other is, it doth offer vs an opportunitie, if not to weaken and vanquiſh the enemie, hauing gotten the aduantage of vs; yet at the leaſt, it doth enable vs to endure and withſtand him, that ſo by drawing out the war in length, to make him wearie of continuance: and gines vs the benefite of time. By this deuiſe, the Venetians being ouerthrowen in all places by the league of Cambray, in the end became conquerours. So that, euen as to him that hath a populous armie and finds himſelfe mighty and ſtrong, it is moſt conuenient to haſten the charge and to fight without deferring or prolonging

of

of time; for delay (the ouerthrow of many actions) can afforde him no other but loſſe, ſickneſſe, infection, ſcarſitie, famine, mutining of the ſouldiers, and diſſolution of his forces: So for him, that is better furniſhed with money then with men, it is moſt aduantagious to make the war long, and to temporize, for ſo in the end his money may giue him victory.

The aduantage of ſcite is of much importance, for the defending or enlarging of dominion, and doth chiefly conſiſt in this: that it be conuenient for the making of an aſſault, & vneaſie to be aſſaulted & entred. For a countrey being as it were naturally fortified, hath eaſie meanes to make a conqueſt and get victory, for the enlarging of their owne dominion and to ouerthrow an other. Of this quallity are theſcituaciõs of Spain & Araby, for both theſe are as it were Ilands, hauing their greateſt parts compaſſed with the ſea. Whereby they may fitly aſſaile the countries neere adioining them, & cannot without great difficultie be aſſaulted themſelues. The one hath dangerous ſhores without harboures, and is inuironed with mountaines which haue few and ſecret paſſages, the other is incloſed with ſands and deſerts: of the ſame quallity is Italy: And amongſt the Ilands, is England. But this aduantage of ſituacion is not ſufficient of it ſelfe to bring to paſſe any notable exploit. For beſides that, there is required plentie of victualls, ſtore of munition and armes, horſes, and diuers other neceſſaries, without which, there is no hope to accompliſh any famous expedition. And moreouer ſuch a diſpoſition and qualitie of the countrie, is neceſſarily required that the foreſaide habilliments may eaſily be brought togither, and remooued to ſuch places where occaſion ſhall moſt need. And therefore although thoſe which poſſeſſe the mountaines & higher countries, may with aduantage come downe vpon the plaine and low countries, and by reaſon of the craggednes and hard paſſages of their countrey can hardly be aſſaulted or purſued, yet haue they not for al that at any time done any thing which may woorthely commend them. *Scituation.*

For beſides, that the mountaines be ordinarilie long and ſtraite, or at the leaſt, much diuided amongſt themſelues, and doe therefore much hinder the ſpeedie drawing togither and

vniting

vniting of their forces, and neceſſaries, they are likewiſe vnprouided of victuals, and of all other thinges requiſite for the warres, and therefore are altogither vnable to continue long in any action. Wherefore their warres are rather after the maner of robbers and theeues, then of ſouldiers. It may alſo be added, that the mountaine men can not liue any long time without entercourſe and trafficke with the men of the plaine countrey. And therefore if they vpon any attempt do not preuaile at the firſt brunt; their beſt courſe will be, to capitulate with their enemies, and to returne home againe although with loſſe: as did the Heluetij at the ouerthrow of Mount Saint Cland.

So we may ſee, that the Engliſhmen which inhabite a plaine and plentifull countrey, haue alwaies preuailed againſt the Scots and Welſhmen, who preſuming vpon the ſtrength of their owne countrey, haue diuers times moleſted them. For that the plaine countrey by reaſon of the fruitfulneſſe, doth miniſter all things requiſite to make warre, and to defray all charges, conueniency to ioine their forces, and being gotten together is able, long time to mainteine them: whereas our the contrary, the mountaines by reaſon of their barrenneſſe affoord no prouiſion for a long iourney, nor are any way able to beare the charge of any notable enterpriſe.

Whereupon it doth proceed, that ſmall Ilands hauing the foreſaid qualities of ſcituation, haue neuer attained any great ſoueraigntie: becauſe the aduantages of the lande are farre greater then thoſe of the ſea. Moreouer their command cannot be great, vnleſſe it be enlarged by the meanes of the firme lande; for Ilands holde the ſame proportion with the continent, that the part doth with the whole. Beſides they be for the moſt part long and narrow, as Candia, Cyprus, Spagniola, Cuba, Saint Lawnce, and Sumatra, and therefore cannot readily bring their forces togither. Neither will I ſticke to ſay, that Ilands although they may with aduantage, come foorth and aſſaile others, are notwithſtanding as it were citties without walls, laid open to the ſpoile of all enemies. As it hapned to Cicill, being aſſailed at one inſtant by the Athenians and the Lacedemonians, and afterward by the Carthaginians and

the

the Romaines. But the prouinces of the firme lande, being for the moſt part of a proportion more round or ſquare, haue their forces continually neerer togither, and to be ſpeedilie vnited, and therefore more readie and apt for anie occaſion.

Yet to ſmall purpoſe are all theſe aforeſaid aduantages, if opportunity giue not way thereunto. And opportunitie is a meeting and concurring of diuers circumſtances, which at one inſtant do make a matter very eaſie, which at another time, thoſe circumſtances being *ouerſlipped*, it will be impoſſible, or very hard, to bring to effect. Wherefore amongſt many and diuers I will here note the moſt principall. The firſt groweth by the baſeneſſe and negligence of the neighbour princes, ariſing, either by reaſon of a naturall defect and dulneſſe; or of too long a peace. So *Cæſar* poſſeſt himſelfe of Italy and of the common wealth, being readie and in armes, the ſtate being diſarmed, and not looking for any ſuch matter. So the Barbarians ſubdued the Empire of Rome. The Arabians the Empire of the Eaſt, of Egipt and Spaine. *Charles* the eight King of France, Italy: The Portugales, India. The Caſtillians, the new world, and Soliman, the kingdome of Hungary. *Occaſion.*

The deuiſion of the neighbouring ſtates, either into common wealthes or into weake Seigniories and thoſe of ſmall power, gaue courage to the Romaines to make themſelues lords of Italy. And made an eaſie paſſage for the Venetians, into Lumbardie: This alſo made the attempt of Thuſcan light vnto the Florentines, and no leſſe that of Barbarie, to the Caſtillians, and to the Portugals, that of Morocco: which they would haue found verie hard, if either the one or the other had expected them with their whole force.

The variance & iarring of the adioyning princes did open the way to the Turkes to enter ſo far into Chriſtendome, and with little trouble to inueſt himſelfe of many kingdomes. For *Amorats* the 3. preſuming vpon the ciuill diſcords of the princes of the bloud royall of Perſia, made that attempt with great aduantage; and to proceed as he hath done there. Neither doth the whole miſchiefe ariſe out of theſe iarres betweene themſelues onely, but in all factions one part will be ſure to intreate the aide of ſome forreine prince againſt the

other: then which no man can haue a better occaſion; becauſe then he commeth armed into the owners houſe at his owne requeſt. So the Romains ſet foote in Cicill, being called in by the Mamertines: In Greece, by the Athenians; In Numidia, by the ſonnes of *Micipſa*: in Prouence, by the Marſillians: in France, by the Hedui, and ſo from time, by diuers others. So *Amorates* the firſt king of Turkes got hold in Europe, being requeſted to aide by the emperour of the Eaſt, being then in warre with the princes of Greece: So *Soliman*, in Hungarie, being intreated by Queene *Iſabell*, and afterwards by king *Iohn*. So the Aragons, in the kingdome of Naples, being drawne thither by Queene *Ione*, the ſecond: and ſo *Henrie* the 2. king of Fraunce made himſelfe Lord of three great cities of the Empire.

Now as touching the deſcription, diuiſion and inhabitation of this great Globe, (for parts & percels whereof ſo great and vniuerſall quarels haue from the beginning bene entertained amongſt princes, peoples, and nations) you ſhall vnderſtand that the ancient Coſmographers, not knowing then the Weſt Indies, nor many other places ſcituated both northward and ſouthward, and ſithence diſcouered, diuided the whole earth into three parts; Europe, Aſia and Afrike, and the worlde into fiue zones, two colde, two temperate, and one extreme hotte, affirming three of thoſe zones to be vnhabitable, the one for extremitie of heate, the other two for extremitie of colde: but becauſe a new and whole worlde hath beene found out ſince thoſe times, our moderne Coſmographers haue added a fourth part terming it America, of *Americus Veſpucius* a Florentine, which did firſt diſcouer it; which againe is ſubdiuided by our later trauellers into three parts, viz. Mexicana, Peruana, and Magellanica, hauing found by good experience (as in this diſcourſe ſhall be fully manifeſted) that theſe three parts are well inhabited and woonderfully repleniſhed with people of ſundry languages.

Europe. Of all theſe ſixe parts becauſe Europe is far leſſe then all the reſt, and yet exceedeth all others in noblenes, magnificence, multitude of people, in might, puiſſance and renowne, we will firſt begin with the deſcription thereof. It is bounded on the North

North with the north Ocean ſea, on the South with the Mediterranean, on the Eaſt with the flood Tanais, and on the Weſt with the Weſt Ocean. In meaſuring with a right line from the furtheſt part of Ireland on the Weſt vnto the flood Tanais on the Eaſt, both places hauing 52. deg. of latitude, hath in longitude 2166. miles, and in meaſuring with a right line from the furtheſt part of Morea on the South, whoſe latitude is 35. degrees vnto the North ſide hauing 72. degrees of latitude, hath in latitude 2220. miles. It conteineth more then 28. Chriſtian kingdomes, at this day as far excelling the reſidue of the prouinces in religion, artes, valour and ciuilitie, as in elder age it did ſurpaſſe them in power and reputation. The principall prouinces are Spaine, France, Germanie, Italie, Slauonia, Greece, Hungarie, Poland, Lituania, Moſcouia, and that toward the North called Scandia, wherein are Denmarke, Norwey, Swethland, and Gurland. The Ilands are Britaine, containing the kingdoms of England and Scotland, and Ireland, in the North Ocean: in the Mediterranean are Sicill, Candie, Corſica, Sardinia, Maiorica, Minorica, Nigropont, Malta, Corfu, Stalamine, Mitilin, Sciro, & many other in the Archipelago. The aire is paſſing good, holſome, temperate, and the ſoile exceeding fertil. Therein are many goodly cities, famous mart townes, and learned vniuerſities. The people haue in all ages excelled all other nations in courage, artes, ſharpnes of wit, and all other gifts of nature. In times paſt it commanded Aſia and Afrike by the armes of the Greekes and Romanes, and at this day it is of great force by the power of the Turkes and Moſcouites, and by the nauigations of the Spaniards and Portugals: ſo as it ſeemeth that nature hath created this people fit to rule and gouerne others, as men farre ſurpaſſing all other nations in wiſedome, courage and induſtrie.

Next vnto Europe ſucceedeth Aſia, renowned by writers for the ſecond part of the world, in regard of the monarchies of the Perſians, Medes, Aſſirians and Babylonians: but indeed moſt celebrated in holie writ for our creation, fall, and redemption, as the region wherein in a manner all the hiſtories and acts mentioned in the old teſtament, and a great part of thoſe in the new, were wrought and accompliſhed. It *Aſia.*

is bounded on the North with the North Ocean, on the South with the red rea, and with diuers other gulfes and ſeas appeering in moderne maps : on the Eaſt with the Eaſt Indian Ocean,& the ſtreight of Anian. On the Weſt it hath the flood Tanais, and the fenne Meotis, with diuers other ſeas, as Boſphorus Cimmereus, Mare Euxinum, the Boſphorus Thracius, Propontis, part of the Mediterranean, and part of the red ſea or gulfe of Arabia, which deuideth Afrike from Arabia fœlix. In meaſuring with a right line from the flood Tanais to the promontorie Tamos, both places hauing 50. degrees of latitude, hath in longitude 4284. miles, and in meaſuring with a right line from the 150. degree of the Equinoctiall vnto the promontorie Tabin, it hath in North latitude 76. degrees, which being multiplied by 60. maketh 4560. miles. The Ancients diuided it into diuers parts, but at this preſent it is beſt diuided into fiue, according to the chiefe and principall empires therein : the firſt whereof confining with Europe is gouerned by the great Duke of Moſcouie, the ſecond belongeth to the great Cham, the third is commanded by the Turke, the fourth is the kingdome of Perſia, the fift comprehendeth that which hath alwaies been called India and gouerned by diuers princes for the moſt part vaſſalls, feodaries or tributaries to other kingdoms. The principall Ilands are Iapan, Luconia, Mindanao, Burneo, Sumatra, Zeilan and Cipres : Gilolo, the Moluccæ, Banda and Celebes belong to Magelanica.

Afrike. Afrike is bounded on the North with the ſtreight of Gibraltar and the Mediterranean ſea, on the ſouth with a ſea which deuideth Afrike from the South lande not yet fully knowen, and on the Eaſt with the red ſea : on the Weſt with the great Atlantike Ocean. In meaſuring with a right line from Gambra on the Weſt vnto the Cape Guardafu on the Eaſt, both places hauing tenne degrees of north latitude or thereabout, hath in longitude 4155. miles : and in meaſuring with a right line from the 50. degree of the Æquinoctiall vnto the Mediterranean ſea; it hath in North latitude 32. degrees, which being multiplied by 60. maketh 1920. miles. In South latitude meaſuring with a right line from the 50. degree of the Æquinoctiall to the Cape of Good Hope, it hath 35. degrees,

grees, which being multiplied by 60. maketh 2100. miles. By the Ancients it hath been diuided into many parts, but at this day into eight, Ægypt, Barbary, Biledulgarid, Sarra, Æthiopia, Nubia, the large prouinces of the Abaſſines and Monomotapa. Of whoſe riches, lawes, cuſtomes, natures and forces you ſhall reade hereafter in their ſeuerall places. The chiefe Ilands are Socotora, Madagaſcar, S. Thomas, Capo Verd, and the Iles of Canarie and Madera.

Mexicana. Mexicana is on all ſides enuironed with the ſea, ſauing that nigh vnto Nombre de Dios it is ioyned by a necke of land to Peruana. The chiefe prouinces are Noua Hiſpania, Florida, Norumbega, Noua Francia, Eſtotiland, and many others. The chiefeſt Iles lying on the North and Northeaſt part are Groinland, Crokland, Iſland, Freeſland, Bacalaos and Cuba.

Peruana. Peruana is alſo enuironed on all ſides with the ſea, ſaue whereas the foreſaide Land-ſtreight doth ioine the ſame to Mexicana. The chiefe prouinces are Braſil, Tiſnada, Caribana, Carthagena, Peru, Charchas, Chili, Chicam, and the land of the Patagones. The moſt renowned Iles, are Hiſpaniola, Boriquen and Margarita.

Magellanica. The ſixt part of the world is as yet but little knowen, notwithſtanding it is thought to containe many large prouinces, amongſt the which Beach is ſuppoſed to be verie rich and abounding in gold. The chiefe Iles are Iaua maior and Iaua minor, Timor, Banda, the Moluccos, Romeros and the Iles of Solomon. Thus much in generall, now of the Particulars.

The kingdome of France.

THE kingdome of France hath for his bounds the Alpes, which diuide it from Italy, the Rhodanus which ſeparates it from Sauoye; Sagona, which parts it from the Sebuſiani, and Burgundians: and the riuer Moſell, which diuides it from Lorraine and the *Dutchie* of Lucemburge. It hath on the Eaſt the ri-

uer

uer Aa; on the South, the Mediterranean ſea and the Pyrenean mountaines; on the Weſt, the great Ocean; and on the North, the Engliſh Ocean. It containeth from Lorraine on the South ſide to Caleis on the North ſide, two hundred French leagues, and little leſſe from Eaſt to Weſt from the riuer Varo to Paure. The neerer the North the narrower it is, & narroweſt betweene Caleis and the Brittiſh promontorie. The figure thereof is betweene round and ſquare, and therefore bigger then a man would take it. It containeth moſt large Prouinces, as Picardie, Normandie, Brittaine, the Iſle of France, Champaigne, Burgundie, Auerne, Dalphenye, Prouince, Bry, Blois, Turin, the Dutchie of Anion, Zantoin, Burgundy, and many others. The beginning thereof ſtandeth in fortie two degrees, and inioyeth ſuch diuerſitie of aire, that, that part which lieth toward the Mediterranean ſea (where ſtands Languedoc and Prouince) bringeth foorth all ſorts of fruits like Italie; that which is towards the Engliſh Ocean (where ſtands Brittaine, Normandie, and part of Picardie) bringeth foorth no wine; the reſidue of the kingdome aboundeth aboue beleefe with all kindes of fruits which Europe affoordeth, except Oliues, figs, and ſuch like. The gentlenes of the aire, with the fertilitie of the ground, and the ſcituation of the riuers is ſo propitious and naturall for the increaſe of fruit, and euerie other liuing creature, that France aboue all the other Regions of Europe may beſt boaſt of theſe prerogatiues. Betweene the mountaines of Auerne, Dalphenie, and the Mediterranean ſea, the aire is ſo temperate by reaſon of the coldnes of the hils (alwaies almoſt couered with ſnow) and the gentle blaſts comming from the ſea, that a man being in this place, would thinke he were vnder the climate wherein Genua is ſeated. And againe, the Pyrenean hils ſtanding as a bulwarke to breake and beat backe the fiercenes of cold and tempeſts, giue the like moderation to another quarter of the countrey. Theſe mountaines are full of bathes and veines of warme water; and the northern windes, which according to moſt opinions make the aire cold, are not heere ſo cold as in other places. For windes participate of the nature of the place by which they paſſe: if by ſnowie mountaines, then bring

bring they with them the cold of thoſe mountaines; if by mariſhes, contagion; if by woods, they are broken; if by ſandie plaines, they are warme; if by lakes or ſeas, they are ſharpe and piercing. Hence commeth it that the windes Panormi in Sicill are ſo extreme hot; for before they pierce thither, they ſcoure thorow the plaines of Sicill, and taking heat from the ſands, carrie it into the citie. The ſouth winde is cold at Genua becauſe it paſſeth the ſea, and taketh coldnes thereof without touching the lande before it arriue. But the north winde which bloweth through France, commeth from the ſea, and taking ſome meaſure of heat of the ſaltnes thereof, and finding no mountaines couered with yce or ſnow in his paſſage, augmenteth his heat by paſſing ouer the fields of Normandie, Champaigne, the Ile of France, and other prouinces, euen to the hils of Auuergne: which being moderately heated by the ſouth winde on the one ſide, and the north wind on the other, bringeth foorth euerie where excellent paſtures, and feedings for ſheepe and cattell, beſides diuers ſorts of medicinable plants and moſt perfect ſimples. Amongſt many branches of thoſe mountaines, there is one which is called the Golden-hill for the noblenes of the ſimples and abundance thereof. Of theſe experiments England may be a ſufficient proofe, which although it lie more northerly then France, yet becauſe it hath few mountaines, and is enuironed on euerie ſide with the ſea, the aire there is verie milde and temperate, yea much more temperate then in France, which is farther diſtant from the Pole: as you may perceiue by the vines which neuer ripen in England, and yet yeeld moſt perfect wines in France. Yea it hapneth verie often that the northren or weſtern winde riſing from the ſea, bringeth ſpringtide before the winter ſeaſon be fully expired, ſo decking the fields with flowers, and the gardens with herbes, that the inhabitants of Turon, Poictou, and the Ile of France, enioy as forward a ſommer, as thoſe of Prouince, or Lago di Garda.

The whole lande of France is fertill and fruitfull, and euery where plentifull of all good things. And as the Apennine ſpreading almoſt ouer the fourth part of Italy, for the moſt part is barren, & yeeldeth ſmall ſtore of fruit; ſo on the cõtrary *Fertilitie.*

in

in the mountaines of Auuergne (being but few) ſtand many good townes and rich places where cloathing is exerciſed, and from whence a good part of the kingdome is ſerued with fleſh, butter, and excellent cheeſe: the reſt of the kingdome almoſt is plaine, heere and there garniſhed with fruitfull hils and greene valleies: in euerie place plentie doth (as it were) contend with varietie, fertilitie with delicacie, commodiouſnes of ſcituation with beautious cities. And herein without all controuerſie Italie giueth place to France: for although ſome one corner thereof affoordeth exquiſite pleaſure and delightfull ſcituation, as Riuiera di Salo, Campania, the territorie of Croton, Tarent, and ſome other cities of Calabria, yet theſe are ſingular and few in Italy; common and frequent in France; eſpecially in Burgundie, Brie, the Ile of France, Turon, Aniou, Zantoin, and Languedoc. In each of which prouinces it ſhould ſeeme that Nature her ſelfe hath diuided, and as it were dedicated by allotment ſome places to *Ceres*, ſome to *Bacchus*, ſome to *Pomana*, and ſome to *Pallas*.

Riuers. But there is nothing in France more worthie the noting then the number and pleaſure of the nauigable riuers, whereof ſome (as it were) gird in the whole realme, as Sagona, Rhodanus, Moſell. Some others cut thorough the middle, as Sequin, Loire, Garon. Into theſe three ſtreames fall ſo many other riuers (ſome from the vttermoſt bounds; ſome from the inmoſt parts of the realme) that it maketh the whole countrey commodious for traffique and exchange of each others wants: inſomuch that by this facilitie of carriage & entercourſe of merchandize, all things may be ſaid to be in common to the whole inhabitants of this kingdome. In Aniou onely are fortie riuers, great and ſmall; whereupon *Katherin de Medicis* was wont to ſay, that this kingdome conteyned more riuers then all Europe beſide. Truely this was a Hyperbolical ſpeech, yet not much more then truth: for the goodnes of the ſoile, and the eaſie tranſporting of commodities, is the cauſe that there are ſo many cities and ſo many townes in this kingdome, and thoſe moſt commonly ſeated vpon the bankes of the riuers. And although it haue many goodly hauens, yet the vpland townes are fairer and richer, then thoſe that ſtand neer

rer the ſea: which argueth that their wealth is their owne, and not brought from forreinee ountries: for there, the ſea townes excell the land townes, where more benefit and prouiſion is reaped by the ſea, then by the land, as *Genua, Venice, Raguſi*: but where the ſtate and proſperitie of cities dependeth wholy vpon the land, there the vplandiſh townes far ſurpaſſe the ſea townes, as *Millain*, and many other in Flanders, Germaine, and Hungarie. All this notwithſtanding, although like goodnes of ſoile be proper to the whole realme of France, as likewiſe the ſcituation of the riuers commodious, yet, Paris except, (whoſe largenes proceedeth from the kings court, the parliaments, and the vniuerſitie) the townes there for the moſt part are but ſmall and meane, yet beautifull, commodious, and verie populous. *Iohn Bodin* writing a deſcription thereof in the time of *Henrie* the ſecond ſaith, that there were ſeuen and twentie thouſand villages hauing pariſh Churches, not comprehending Burgundie among them. In another deſcription written in the raigne of *Charles* the ninth, it is ſaide, that the number of the inhabitants exceeded fifteene millions.

And as the cities and townes of France may boaſt of their riuers, ſo the Caſtles and villages of the noblemen, are no leſſe fauoured with the pleaſure and ſtrength of lakes and mariſhes, which although they may not be compared to the lakes of Italy and Swizerland, yet are they ſo many, and ſo full of excellent fiſh, that the numbers of the one may equallize the largenes of the others. The ſame may be ſpoken of woods, that they are not ſo ſpatious as plentifull: out of theſe woods in times paſt the greateſt part of the kings reuenues did ariſe, and the noblemen doe make great profite by ſelling great quantities thereof for firewood, but greater, by ſales of timber trees: for, for want of ſtone, the greateſt part of their buildings conſiſt of timber. *Caſtles.* *Villages.* *Woods.*

In regard of the commodious ſcituation of theſe riuers ſeruing ſo fitly for the tranſportation of vittailes from one place to another, this kingdome is ſo abundantly furniſhed with all plentie of prouiſion, that it is able to nouriſh any armie in the fielde how populous ſoeuer. When *Charles* the fift *Vittails.*

entred France, first by Prouince, and afterward by Champaigne, it maintained more then one hundred and fiftie thousand soldiers, besides the ordinarie garrisons. In the raigne of *Charles the* ninth, and in our times also, there were maintained in this kingdome 20000. horse, 30000. footmen strangers, and of French 15000. horse, and 100. thousand footemen, neither did the kingdome for this feele want or scarcitie.

Corne. Wine. Salt. There are in France (as a man may terme them) fower loadstones to draw riches from forreine nations; corne caried into Spaine and Portugall; wines transported into England, Flanders, and the inhabitants of the Balticke sea; and salt wherewith the whole kingdome & the bordering nations are plentifully stored. This salt is made in Prouince of the salt water of the Mediterranean sea, and at Browage in Zantoine, where the heate of the sunne ceaseth his vertue of getting, making and boiling salt (of sea water) not daining to yeeld so great a fauour any farther northward. I said of sea water, because further north there may be salt found also, but made either of some speciall spring water (as in Lorraine) or compound of some minerals mixt with fresh waters, as in Poland, England, and Germanie, or else taken foorth of some salt mines: such as in times past were in Sweueland; but they are now decaied. The fourth loadstone is canuasse and linnen cloth, whereof what profite ariseth, a man will hardly beleeue, vnlesse he hath seene what abundance thereof is carried into Spaine and Portugall, to make sailes and cordage for the furnishing of shipping. There groweth also Woad, Saffron, and other merchandize of smaller value, which though they equallize not the abouesaid commodities, yet rise they to a round summe, yea such as may enrich a kingdome. By reason of these neuer-dying riches, *Lewes* the eleuenth was woont to say, that France was a continuall flourishing meadow, which he did mowe as often as he list: And *Maximilian* the Emperour termed the French king to be *Pastorem ouium, cum vellere aureis*, which he sheared at his pleasure. It is vndoubtedly true, that if the kings of France were as wise and politike, as they are powerfull in armes and riches, the affaires of Europe would

Cannas. Linnen cloth.

Woad. Saffron.

would much ſtand at their deuotion. But force and wiſedome ſeldome keepe companie: therefore the Poets fained *Hercules* furious: *Arioſto* fained *Orlando* ſottiſh: *Virgill* deſcribeth *Dares* to be inſolent: and the Græcians termed all thoſe people *Barbari* which wanted either arts or learning: *Homer* bringeth in *Achilles* as one vnable to bridle his owne furie: and *Mars* ſo vnaduiſed, that he ſuffered himſelfe vnawares to be caught in *Vulcans* net. For what ſtate can be more dreadfull, or what power can ſeeme more terrible, then the maieſtie of that kingdome, which is able of it ſelfe to feede fifteene millions of people, and yet hath ſufficient remaining for the nouriſhing and maintenance of any puiſſant armie beſides? For the abundance of people and plenty of vittailes are the ſtrongeſt ſinewes of all kingdomes, and therefore the Romaines highly prized the ruſticke diuiſion for their numbers and prouiſion.

Reuenues.

As touching their reuenues, *Lewes* the eleuenth gathered a million & an halfe: *Francis* the firſt attained vnto three millions: *Henrie* the ſecond to ſixe: *Charles* the ninth to ſeauen: *Henrie* the third to aboue ten: *Lewes* the twelfth left his kingdome full of golde and ſiluer, and was therefore called *Pater populi*: *Francis* the firſt, though he managed great wars, and made infinite expences, left notwithſtanding eight hundred thouſand crownes in his treaſurie: but *Henrie* the ſecond his ſonne, enuying the greatnes of *Charles* the Emperour, and coueting to ſurpaſſe him, tooke vp money of euery one at 16. *per centum*, left his ſonnes indebted 30. millions of crownes, and without credite amongſt the merchants to the value of a farthing: inſomuch that *Charles* the ninth and *Henrie* the third his ſonnes (the laſt more then the firſt) were inforced to laie ſuch heauie impoſitions, not onely on the people, but alſo on the clergie: that *Henrie* the fourth now reigning might well complaine, that after the deceaſe of theſe two princes, he found the ſtate of France, as *Veſpaſian* found the Romaine Empire after *Nero* and *Caligula*, the firſt whereof had waſtfullfully giuen away fiftie and fiue millions, the other riotouſly ſpent threeſcore & ſeauen in one yeere. Whereby the world may ſee, that the riches of a prince conſiſt not in the abun-

dance of reuenues, but in the thriftie husbanding thereof. For *Francis* the first made greater warres with lesse reuenues, left his credite sound with the merchants, and readie money to his sonne; where on the contrarie, *Henry* made farre lesse warre, and yet left the kingdome deepely indebted, and the people poore and miserable.

With the foresaid reuenues the former kings maintained 1500. Lanciers, & 4500. crosbowes (in report 4000. Lanciers and 6000. crosbowes continually paide:) which troupes of horse were accounted the strongest in all Christendome. Euerie Lancier brought with him one crosbowe and an halfe, so that one companie of Lanciers had another of crosbowes, seruing both vnder one enfigne, commonly called a Guidon: and one captaine gouerned both companies, consisting in the whole of 100. Lanciers, and 150. crosbowes.

One million and three hundred thousand crownes were yeerely spent vpon these companies. A Lance receiued 250. a crosbowe eightie, the Guidon 300. the Lieutenant 380. the Captaine 820. *Charles* the seuenth reduced these ordinances to perfection, made the number certaine, appointed their wages, trained them in exercise, and placed them vpon the frontiers vnder captaines, lieutenants, enfignes and Guidons. He likewise deuided these Ordinances into men at armes and archers, adioined to them Targatiers, Harbengers, Muster-masters, Pay-masters, and Commisaries, committing them to the charge and gouernment of the Constable, Marshals, and great Lords of his kingdome: the residue of their subiects they did not much inure to serue on foote, either vpon distrust of their valour, or for feare of mutinies and rebellions. For the French by nature are more fierce then strong: and if at the first charge they be gallantly resisted, they will soone forget their fiercenes, and loose courage, becomming indeed rather women then men. Besides they are not able to indure hardnes and trauell, in continuance of time growing so slothfull and negligent, that vpon some disorder or other, a good leader will finde an easie occasion to vanquish and defeat them: whereof often experience was seene in the realme of Naples, and at Garigliano, yea though they were double the

the number of their enimies. For when winter began to draw on, and raine and colde to moleſt their bodies, then began they to drop away one by one, leauing the camp ſo diſordered, and their trenches ſo vnfurniſhed, that through theſe miſdemenors againſt all ſence and reaſon, the Spaniards caried away both the honour of the victorie, and the free poſſeſſion of the Italian prouinces. But *Charles* the eight conſidering of what importance the ſeruice of footemen were, inſtituted a ſquadron of fiue thouſand French foote; that number *Francis* the firſt augmented to fiftie thouſand, howbeit at this preſent they are againe caſheerd for their euill carriage & behauiour, & in their places are thoſe regimẽts inſtituted, which cõtinue to this day, and are fiue in number, viz. The regiment of the Guard; the regiment of Picardie; the regiment of Champain; the regiment of Piemont, and the regiment of Gaſcoin, commonly called the regiment of Nauarre. In each of theſe are twelue companies, of hundreds apeece, quartered in garriſons through diuers places of the kingdome, and from thence vpon occaſion of ſeruice drawen into the fielde. *Lewes* the 11. that at his pleaſure he might ſheare or rather fleece the people of France, and make them vnapt for warfare, waged the Swiſſers: Theſe precedents *Francis* and *Henry* his ſucceſſors following, continually hired great numbers of the Germaine nations.

But whoſoeuer he be that goeth about to make his people vnwarlike, and entertaineth forreine ſoldiers, greatly ouerſhooteth himſelfe. For by the exerciſe of armes and occurrences of warre, courage is increaſed, and the commons by practiſe and experience will become hardie, and vpon occaſions of neceſſitie able like ſoldiers to maintaine their actions: for as conuerſing with good men makes men good; ſo the company of ſoldiers maketh other couragious. Beſides many caſualties may happen, which may not be committed to the experience of ſtrangers, becauſe they know not the ſcituation of places, neither may many matters, for the weight of the buſines, be truſted to their fidelitie. Wherefore it is very expedient, that that people be entertained vnder militarie diſcipline, in whoſe prouinces warre is like to continue, either by reaſon of

ſcituation,

ſcituation, or other caſuall accidents: as it happened to France, where after peace was concluded with the Spaniard, and the Swiſſers & Almaines departed to their owne homes, yet by remaining full of French ſoldiers all things were turned vpſide downe.

Of their ſea forces little can be ſpoken, yet haue they an Admirall, which is an office of great honor and profit, by reaſon of commodities tranſported and returned into the countrey; but of no great command becauſe there is no ſhipping belonging to the prince, as in England Spaine and Denmarke.

The king hath fower guards: the firſt of French gentlemen in place and attendancie like our gentlemen penſioners; they are 200. in number, and their pay is 20. crownes a moneth. The ſecond ſort is of Scots, and they likewiſe are gentlemen, ſome attending on the kings perſon, others appointed to other offices in the court, and go alwaies armed either with the halberd or harquebuze. Thoſe which attend on the kings perſon are 24, and receiue yeerely 400. franks a piece, the reſidue 300, and a liuerie. The third ſort is of inferior French, and their imployment is ſuch, as the ſeruice of the yeomen of the guard in England. The fourth conſiſteth of Swiſſers, and they wait at the court gate in warlike manner, and are releeued twice a day, once at morning, and againe at euening. One hundred of them receiue 12. franks a moneth, the reſidue 10. franks monethly, and 2. ſuits of apparell, viz: Hoſe and doublets twice a yeere, one for the ſummer and other for the winter. The Scots he entertaineth for their innated hatred towards the Engliſh; the Swiſſers for the like towards the houſe of Auſtrich. Notwithſtanding, although for number of Nobility, greatneſſe of offices, goodlineſſe of townes and multitude of the guard, this kingdome may ſeeme to challenge precedence before any court in Europe; yet for maieſty of the Prince, Order of the court, prouiſion of the courtiers and entertainment of ſtrangers, it may no way compare with that of England.

Munition. Concerning munition, there is no kingdome wherein is greater plentie then there; whereof are many reaſons; the firſt for that the kingdome is deuided into many Regalties and princi-

principalities,as Burgundie,Britaine, Aniou and Normandie; euery one of which prouinces ſtrengthen their owne frontiers: Beſides, the plentie of their munitions hath beene greatly increaſed by the war of the Engliſh, who in times paſt commanded a great part of the kingdome. Secondly, the ſcituation and nature of the places fit for fortifications, as alſo the willingnes and readines of the people, hath euen with eaſe ouercome the labour of theſe affaires. For there is no nation more induſtrious in fortifying,and more prodigall in expence vpon theſe workes: neither are the bowels of the kingdome leſſe fortified then the frontiers, for Beauois, Trois, Orleans, Angiers,Bourdeaux,Lymoſin,San Florum,Carcaſſon,and Soiſſons, are not for ſtrength and fortification inferior to Calais, Perone, Narbone, or any other fortified frontier thing,ſo that each skirt of euery particular prouince ſtandeth in ſteed of a frontier to euery border of the adioyning territorie through the whole kingdome.

The kingdome of England.

AMongſt all the Ilands of Europe, England (which the Ancients called *Britannia*) without all controuerſie for circuit and power challengeth the chiefeſt prerogatiue. It containeth in circuit 1800. miles, diuided into two kingdoms, England and Scotland. The natu- *Scotland.*
rall ſtrength of Scotland (being barren, full of mountaines, lakes,& woods) is the chiefeſt cauſe of this diuiſion; in ſo much that the armies of the Romaines could neuer bring it wholy vnder their ſubiectiō; the emperour *Seuerus* loſt there a great part of his army. The kings of England,though they far excell them in ſtrength, and haue ouerthrowne them in many battailes, coulde neuer bring them vnder their iuriſdiction. The lakes, the woods, and the marriſhes (which euen in plaines make great pooles) being vnto them a naturall wall & trench againſt all incurſions. On the tops of mountaines are manie fruitfull plaines,plentifull and fit for the feeding of cattle, and thicke

thicke woods full of wilde beasts: These rockie and mountainous places abounding notwithstanding with woods and pastures, doe so strengthen the countrey, that they neither feare to be forced by inuasion, nor to be constrained with hunger: for the dangerous accesse of the mountaines, and the thicknesse of the woodes, secureth them against the assaults of their enimies; and in besiegings they doe sustaine themselues by cattle and wilde beastes, which can neuer faile them.

Forces. To this helpeth the abundance of people, fierce of courage, and excellent in the vse of their armes: for necessities sake being able speedily to assemble 25. or 30. thousand men against the inrodes of their enimies; and trusting to the strength of situation of places and practise of their armes, they endeuour not to fortifie their cities, nor hauens, which are so thick in this countrey, that by reason of the inlets of the sea, there is not almost one house distant aboue twentie miles from the Ocean. The king of Scotland gouerneth the Hebrides, being fortie two, and the Orchades thirtie two in number.

But since the merchandize, neither Scotland nor the saide Ilands, are better stored with plenty of corne, more then sufficeth for their owne prouision, and the people are neither giuen to arts, or abounding in wealth, few merchants doe resort thither.

Diuision. Situation. But England, whereof we now treate, is diuided into three great prouinces: England, Cornwall, and Wales. England stretcheth to the Germaine sea: Cornwall is right against France: Wales against Ireland. This most florishing kingdome conteineth two Archbishopricks, Canterburie, and Yorke, 26. bishopricks, 25. cities, 641. market townes and 186. castles. In the raigne of king *Henry* and his sonne *Edward*, there were reckoned forty thousand parishes, but now there are onely 9725.

Cornwall and Wales in comparison of England are barren, and in the vpland places the people liue vpon white *Wales.* meates and oaten bread, especially in Wales; where notwithstanding nature hath placed an Iland (commonly called Anglesey)

Angleſey) ſo neere vnto it, abounding with corne and cattle, that it may woorthily be called the mother thereof. Cornwall is exceeding rich in mines of Tinne and Lead. England farre ſurpaſſeth both theſe prouinces in largenes, riches, and fertilitie: and though it ſtand ſomewhat more northerly, notwithſtanding by the benefite of the ſea, or ſome vnknowne influence of the ſtars, the aire there is ſo gentle and temperate, rather thick and moiſt, then ſharpe & cold, that in token thereof, the bay tree and the roſemarie are alwaies greene. And it is moſt certaine, that Flanders and Brabant are more vexed with cold and ice then England: wherein for the moſt part the land is plaine; yet now and then ſo garniſhed with fruitfull and delightfull hils, and thoſe riſing ſo pleaſantly by little and little, that they which ſee them a far off, can hardly diſcerne them from the plaine. *Cornwall.* *England.*

The cheefeſt prouiſion of the kingdome is corne, cattell and fiſh, ſo ſtored therewith for plenty, goodnes, and ſweetnes, that it needeth neither the helpe of Fraunce, no nor of any neighbour-bordering countrey. Among other things the fleſh eſpecially of their ſwine, oxen, and veales haue the beſt reliſh of any part of Chriſtendome, and of fiſh their Pike and Oyſters. It bringeth not foorth Mules nor Aſſes, but of horſe infinite ſtore. *Prouiſion.*

The wealth thereof conſiſteth in neuer decaying mines of tinne and lead: there are alſo found veines of copper and iron, and in Cornewall is digged tinne of ſuch excellent fineneſſe, that it ſeemeth little inferiour to ſiluer in qualitie. Heere the wools are moſt fine, by reaſon of the hils, whereof the kingdome is full. On theſe hils groweth a ſmall and tender kinde of graſſe, neither dunged, nor watered with ſpring or riuer, but in winter nouriſhed with the moiſture of the aire, and in ſommer with the deaw of heauen, which is ſo gratefull and pleaſing to the ſheepe, that it cauſeth them to beare fleeces of ſingular goodneſſe and exceeding fineneſſe. The Iland breedeth no woolues nor any other rauening beaſts, and therefore their flockes wander night and day, by hils, dales, and fields, as well incloſed as common, without feare or danger. Moſt delicate clothes are wouen of this wooll, which from thence are tranſ- *Merchandiſe.* *Minerals.* *Wooll.* *Cloth.*

ported in great abundance into Germanie, Poland, Denmarke, Sweueland, and other prouinces, where they are in high requeſt. There grow all ſorts of pulſe, great ſtore of Saffron, and infinite quantitie of Beere tranſported from thence into Belgia, as alſo pelts and ſea-coale. The Iland is ſo commodiouſly ſeated for the ſea, that it is neuer without reſort of Portugall, Spaniſh, French, Flemiſh, and Eaſterling merchants. The traffique betweene the Engliſh and the Flemiſh ariſeth to an ineſtimable value: for *Guicciardin* writeth, that before the tumults of the Low-countries they bartered for twelue millions of crownes yeerely.

Saffron. *Beere.* *Pelts.* *Seacoles.*

There are other Ilands ſubiect to the crowne of England, as Ireland, Wight, Man and Angleſey, the ancient dwelling of the Druides, Syllyes, Gernſey, Ierſey and Alderney.

Ireland. Ireland is not much leſſe then England in bignes, for it is three hundred miles long, and ninetie broad, mountainous, woodie, full of bogs, apter for paſture then corne, and abounding with milke and butter. It ſendeth foorth great ſtore of butter, skinnes and ſaffron. It is full of riuers and lakes abounding with fiſh. It hath one Primate, and two Archbiſhopricks, Armach and Caſſels: the chiefe ſeat is Dublin, and that part which lieth towards the Eaſt and the ſouth is beſt peopled. The prouinces of Vlſter, Conaught and Mounſter ſcituated to the weſt and north, are leſſe fruitfull, and more ſauage.

Angleſey. The other three Ilands are about one bignes: of them Angleſey is the beſt, and therefore called the mother of Wales: it

Man. is wel repleniſhed with cattell and plenty of corne. Man is fiue & twenty miles diſtant from England: it hath one Biſhoprick and two hauens: the land is not verie fertill.

Wight. Wight is a hilly countrey: in it is Newport a towne ſtrongly fortified: it incloſeth the whole channell of Southhampton, which is ouer againſt it, and the faireſt hauen in that ſea.

Strength by ſituation. In ſtrength of ſcituation no kingdome excelleth England: for it hath theſe two properties, which *Ariſtotle* wiſheth in the building of a cittie: one is, that it be difficult to beſiege; the other, that it be eaſie to conuey in and out all things neceſſarie: theſe two commodities hath England by the ſea, which

to

to the inhabitants is a deepe trench againſt hoſtile inuaſions, and an eaſie paſſage to take in, and to ſend out all commodities whatſoeuer. Such is England, ſcituated in the middeſt of the maine Ocean, which euen by naturall cauſes fortifieth the Iland, more then any ſea doth any other kingdome. For on the weſt is the Iriſh Ocean, a ſea ſo ſhallow, and ſo full of rocks and ſlates, that it is verie dangerous for great ſhips; and on the ſouth the flowing and ebbing of the Brittiſh Ocean is ſo violent, the remouing of the ſands and ſhelues ſo vncertaine, and the riſing of the water betweene 12. and fifteene fathome, and then falling ſo much againe (a thing woonderfull to be ſpoken off) ſo ordinarie euery 12. howers, that without an Engliſh pilot no ſtranger ſhalbe able to bring in a veſſell in ſafetie, and he likewiſe muſt bring his tide iuſtly with him, otherwiſe it is impoſſible to land. The ſea coaſt is on euery ſide cliffie and inacceſſible, except in ſome certaine places which are ſtrongly fortified, as Barwick, Douer, Dertmouth, Plymouth, Famouth, Briſtow, Milford, &c. ſo that the whole Iland may be taken for one impregnable caſtell or Bulwarke.

To this ſtrength of ſcituation may be ioyned their ſea and lande forces. As touching their ſea-forces (beſides the Naue Royall) the kingdome hath ſo many faire hauens, and thoſe ſo frequented with merchants, that two thouſand ſhips are reported to trafique there. Be this as it may, it is vndoubtedly true, that vpon neceſſitie they are able to put to ſea aboue fower hundred ſhips. *Edward* the third at the ſiege of Caleis, and *Henrie* the eight at the ſiege of Bullen, waifted ouer with a thouſand ſaile of all ſorts: and therefore to inuade that Iland, whoſe hauens are hard to aproach, and worſe to enter, by reaſon of the fortifications, and which haue ſo many ſhips at commaund, I account a moſt difficult and dangerous enterpriſe. And to this dangerous difficultie may be added another, which is, that the Engliſh people are maruellous expert in maritime actions, then whom at ſea there is not a valianter and bolder nation vnder heauen. For in moſt ſwift ſhips, excellent well furniſhed with ordinance (wherewith the kingdome aboundeth) they goe to ſea with as good courage in winter as in ſommer, all is one with them. They trade into *By ſea.*

Nauigation. Moſcouie, Cathay, Alexandria of Egypt, Conſtantinople, Liuonia, Barbarie and Guinea. Anno 1585. with a fleete of fiue and twentie ſhips, wherein were 2500. ſouldiers, they ſayled into the weſt Indies, and tooke Saint Iago, Saint Domingo in Hiſpaniola and Cartagena on the continent, Saint Auguſtines a citie built of timber, and by them deſtroyed with fire.

In the time of war they continually vexe the Terceraz and the coaſt of Braſill. Two of their Captaines haue ſayled round about the world, with no leſſe courage then glorie and good fortune.

At land. Their force at land is nothing inferiour to that at ſea; for the kingdome is diuided into two and fiftie ſhires, in one onely whereof (commonly called Yorkeſhire) it is thought ſeuentie thouſand footemen may be leuied. Euerie ſhire hath a lieutenant, who ſeeth to the election and trayning of ſoldiers when neceſſitie requireth. In chooſing of ſoldiers, they take the names of all the inhabitants of the countrey from aboue ſixteene yeeres of age to ſixtie, and out of theſe they chooſe the likelieſt and ableſt for ſeruice. The taller and ſtronger are choſen for footemen, and theſe diuided into fower kinds. The firſt are archers, by whoſe dexteritie they conquered the greateſt part of France, tooke king *Iohn* captiue, and held Paris ſixteene yeeres. The arrowes of the Parthians were neuer more dredfull to the Romaines, then the bowes of the Engliſh to the Frenchmen. The ſecond ſort vſed light ſtaues well headed with iron, with which they woulde ſtrike a man from his horſe. The other two, vſe and experience of latter times hath taught them: the one is the harquebuſe, the other the pike, a fit weapon for their conſtitution, by reaſon of their tall, ſtrong and manlike ſtature. For their ſeruice on horſebacke, they chooſe the men of ſmall ſtature, but wel ſet, actiue and nimble. Theſe horſemen are of two ſorts; ſome heauie armed, and thoſe for the moſt part are gentlemen; other lighter armed, ſome riding after the manner of the Albanneſſes; ſome after the faſhion of Italy, vſing a ſcul, a Iacke, a ſword and long light ſpeares. And although they are able to bring to the field two thouſand men at armes, and infinite troupes of light horſemen; yet their horſemen neuer carried like reputation

Archers.

Light horſemen.

Harquebuſhers.

Pikemen.

putation to their footemen: for *Edward* the third (which made ſo many iorneyes into France) and obtained ſo many famous victories, to ſhew what confidence he repoſed in his infanterie, euer left his horſe and put himſelfe into the battell of his footemen: whereas the French kings not daring to inure their commons to warfare (leaſt leauing their manuell occupations and trades, they ſhould grow inſolent in the warres, to which humour they are greatly addicted) alwaies put themſelues and their hopes in the fortune of their caualrie, being all almoſt gentlemen. But for as much, as the French maintaine no good races of horſe, and to purchaſe them from other places is a matter of great charge, and good cannot alwaies be gotten for money; for theſe reaſons, and for that horſemen are nothing ſo ſeruiceable in the fielde as footemen, I thinke the French haue ſo often beene defeated by the Engliſh.

To ſhew what force the kings of England are able to bring into the field, let this one example ſtande for manie. *Henrie* the eight paſſed to Bullen with an armie diuided into three Battallions: in the vantgard paſſed twelue thouſand footemen, and fiue hundred light horſemen, clothed in bleewe iackets with redde gardes. The middle ward (wherein the King was, and paſſed laſt ouer) conſiſted of twentie thouſand footemen, and two thouſand horſe, clothed with red iackets and yellow gards. In the rereward was the Duke of Norfolke, and with him an armie like in number and apparell to the firſt, ſauing that therein ſerued one thouſand Iriſhmen, all naked ſaue their mantels and their thicke gathered ſhirtes: their armes were three darts, a ſword and a skeane: They drewe after them one hundred great pieces, beſides ſmall: an armie by the cenſure of *Gnicciardin*, not more notable by the multitudes of ſoldiers and conſideration of their valour, then moſt glorious by the preſence and maieſtie of their king, in whoſe perſon appeered at that inſtant, being in an age diſpoſed and actiue, all thoſe tokens of honor and magnanimitie, which riſing afterwards to their full ripenes and perfection by degrees of time, ſtudie and experience, made him the moſt renowned and mightie prince that liued in his age in all this part or circuit of the earth which we call Chriſtendome.

ſtendome. Their carriages were ſo many, that therewith they intrenched their campe, as with a wall. And for the carriage of their ordinance and their baggage, and for drawing of their prouiſion, they tranſported into the continent aboue fiue and twentie thouſand horſe: and beſides all other kind of prouiſion, they brought with them fifteene thouſand oxen, and an infinite number of other cattell. The quantities of ladders, bridges, ſhot, powder, and other furnitures following ſo royall an armie, what pen can number?

In England the nobility poſſeſſe few caſtels or ſtrong places enuironed with wals and ditches, neither haue they iuriſdiction ouer the people. The dignities of Dukedomes, Marqueſſes, and Earldomes are no more but bare titles, which the king beſtoweth on whom he pleaſeth, and peraduenture they poſſeſſe neuer a penie of reuenue in the place from whence they take their titles: where on the contrarie the nobilitie in France poſſeſſe ſome abſolute, ſome mixt gouernment with the hereditarie titles of Lords, Barons, Earles, Marqueſſes, Dukes and Princes. They are Lords not of townes onely, but of great and goodly cities; receiuing homage and fealtie of their tenants: but acknowledge the ſoueraignetie of the king and the parliaments.

Netherland.

OF all the three parts of Gaule, Belgia, which we commonly call Netherland, is the nobleſt by the authoritie of *Ceſar*, *Strabo* and other approoued authors, not onely for the nobility and exeellencie of the people of the countrie, but likewiſe for the greatnes and woorthines of thoſe things that haue bin inuented there, & the accidents that there haue hapned. They inuented the arte of printing, reſtored muſicke, framed the chariot, deuiſed the laying of colours in oile, the working of colours in glaſſe, the making of tapeſtrie, ſaies, ſearges, woſteds, ruſſets, triſadoes, and diuers ſorts of linnen cloth, with innumerable other ſmall trifles: all

ſorts

ſorts of clocks and dials, and the mariners compaſſe. It is diuided into 17. prouinces, viz. the Dukedomes of Brabant, Limburg, Lutzemburg and Guelders: the Earledomes of Flanders, Artois, Henault, Holland, Zeland, Namure and Zutphen, the Marquiſat of the ſacred Empire, the Seigniories of Frieſland, Mechlin, Vtrecht, Oueriſſel and Groningen, all territories rich, plentifull and exceeding populous. In them are 208. walled townes, ſtately and magnificent, beſides 3230 townes hauing priuilege of walled townes, and 6300. villages with pariſh churches. It hath manie mines of lead, copreſſe, and cole, and quarries of excellent good ſtone. The Emperor *Charles* had an intention to erect it into a kingdome, but the difficultie conſiſted herein, that euerie of theſe prouinces being gouerned by peculiar cuſtomes, prerogatiues and priuileges, would neuer haue yeelded vnto one royall law common to all, eſpecially thoſe that had the largeſt priuileges; for which cauſe he gaue ouer his determination. It is ſeated commodiouſly for all the prouinces of Europe, and containeth in circuit about 1000. Italian miles. The aire of later times is become much more holſome and temperate then in times paſt, whether it be by reaſon of the increaſe of inhabitāts, or the induſtry of the people, who ſpare no charge to amend whatſoeuer is amiſſe. The beeues of Holland and Frieſland are verie great, and weigh ſome of them 1600. pound, of 16. ounces to the pound: the ewes in theſe prouinces and ſome part of Flanders bring foorth three and fower lambes at a time, and the kine often two calues at once. It bringeth foorth great quantitie of mather, very perfect woad, but no great ſtore; but of flaxe and hempe great abundance. Whoſoeuer ſhall conſider what commoditie they raiſe by their fiſhing and traffike only, may well ſay, that no nation through the whole world may compare with them for riches. For *Guicciardin* writeth, that of their herring fiſhing they make yeerely 441000. pound ſterling; their fiſhing for cod 150000. pound ſterling; and of their fiſhing for ſalmon more then 200000. crownes, which is of ſterling money 60000. pound. The continuall riches that groweth to the country of other ſorts of fiſh taken al the yeere is infinite. The value of the principall merchandize yeerely brought

brought in and caried out is likewiſe infinite; the foreſaid authour eſteemeth it to about 14. millions, one hundred and thirtie fiue thouſand crownes: whereof England onely bringeth to the value of fiue millions, and two hundred and fiftie thouſand crownes. It is a woonder to ſee, how that the inhabitants of all theſe prouinces (eſpecially of Brabant and Flanders) vnderſtand and ſpeake two or three languages, and ſome fower or more, according to their entercourſe with merchants and ſtrangers, yea in Anwerpe you ſhall here the women ſpeake Dutch, French, Italian, Spaniſh and Engliſh.

Of their forces at ſea and land (becauſe they are ſo well knowen to al the northern nations) I wil begin to giue you inſtances of no higher times, then when they firſt began to vndertake the cauſe of the Goſpell & their country, againſt the furie of the Spaniſh nation, viz. about the yeere of our Lord God 1567. at which time the Duke of Alua made preparatiõ in Spaine to deſcend into theſe prouinces. To ſpeake nothing of their late nauigations to the Ilands and the eaſt Indies. In the verie infancie of this quarrell, after the Prince of *Orange*, perceiued by the death of the Counts *Horne* and *Egmont*, and his owne proſcription, that this people ſought nothing but the oppreſſion of the countrey, and extirpation of the reformed religion, he ſtood vpon his guard, and leuied an armie of 44. enſignes of Almaines, fower thouſand French and Wallons, and ſeauen thouſand horſe well armed.

And though it pleaſed God at the firſt to ſuffer them to receiue many ouerthrowes, yet by taking of townes (as the Briel by the Lord of *Lumay* 1572.) and diuers other ſtrong places by the Count of *Berg*, they haue euer ſithence euen vnto this day maintained their iuſt quarrell, to the exceſſiue loſſe both of men and treaſure to this tyrannous nation. In the yeere 1573. they defeated the Nauy of the Duke of Alua vnder the conduct of Count Boſſu, and 1574. the Fluſhingers inioyed the like victorie againſt thoſe whom the great *Commedador* ſent to reuictuall Middleborough at that time ſtreightly belegered by the Prince of *Orange*. Who although hee were thus ſufficientlie buſied in the Low countries, yet ſhewing how little he eſteemed the forces of the ſpaniſh king, granted

out

out of his troupes the three thouſand foot, which *Sebaſtian de Coſta* had demanded in the behalfe of *Sebaſtian* his maſter for the voiage of Africke.

Anno 1578. they ouerthrew the whole campe of the archduke *Mathias* neere Rimnant in Brabant, where the glorie of that daies victory was next vnder God, chiefly attributed to the valour of Maiſter *Norris* then colonie of the Engliſh, and *Stimard* colonel of the Scottiſh. Anno 1579. the Hollanders hearing of a confederacie betweene the Malcontents of Artois and Henalt, and the Captaine of the Briel, for the deliuerie of the towne, preuented them at ſea, and obteined a very famous victory. What victories by the fauour of God, they haue of late daies obtained, and what daungerous ſieges they haue moſt reſolutely indured the beleguerings of Harlem, Leiden, Antwerp, Sluce, Bergen vpon Zome, Bomel, Oſtend and infinite other places, which the battailes of Turneholt and Newport, can wel witnes to the whole world.

The kingdome of Spaine.

SIthence the remembrance of later times, a larger Empery hath not be fallen any chriſtian potentate, then that which the Spaniſh enioie at this day, eſpecially ſince the vniting of the kingdome of Portugal with the dependancies thereof vnto this crowne. For beſides the large and faire prouinces in Europe, the goodly regions of Aſia, and diuers rich territories in Africk, he enioyeth in peace and ſecurity, without riuall or competitor, the *new world*, in circuit more ſpacious then either Europe or Africke.

In Europe he is the ſole ſoueraigne of Spaine, holding it whole and entire, a thing worthie obſeruation; for that by the ſpace of 800. yeeres before our age, it neuer obeied any one prince, but was diſmembred, and peece-meale claimed by diuers ſeigniors: He hath very much ſhaken Belgia, and lordeth it ouer the kingdome of Naples, containing in circuit 1400. miles: and retaineth Inſubria otherwiſe called the Duchie *Europe.*

of Millaine, comprehending three hundred miles in circuit. Of the Ilands he holdeth Maiorique, Minorique, and Euisa: the first of three hundred miles, circuit; the second of 150. the third of eight. Sicill is reported to containe 700. Sardinia 562.

Africk. In Africa he holdeth the great hauen called Masalquiuir, the most secure and safe harbour in the whole Mediterranean sea. He hath also Oran, Melilla, and the rocke commonly called the Penion of Velez: and without the Streights he possesseth the Canarie Ilands, twelue in number, and the least of seauen containing 90. miles.

Portugal. In the right of the houle of Portugall, he possesseth the famous places of Septa and Tangier, which may rightly be surnamed the keies of the Streights; yea of the Mediterranean, and Atlantique Ocean. Without the Streights, he holdeth the citie of Mazaga: and by the same title in the vast Ocean, he claimeth the Terceraz, Porto Santo, and Madera, famous for the Wines which grow therein, and the ladielike Iland of all the Atlantique sea, containing by estimation 160. miles in compasse: then the Ilands of Cape Verd, seauen in number. Vnder the æquinoctiall he holdeth the Iland of Saint Thomas, somewhat more spacious then Madera, but most plentifull in sugar, and from thence rangeth ouer that huge tract of land, which trendeth from Cape Aguer to Cape Guardafu. Lastly he is lord of all the traffique, merchandize, negociation, and nauigation of the whole Ocean, and of all the Ilands which nature hath scattered in these seas, especially betweene the Cape of Good-Hope and the promontorie of Guardafu.

Asia. In Asia in the aforesaid right of the crowne of Portugall, he ruleth the better part of the westerne coasts, viz. Ormus, Diu, Goa, and Malaca. Ormus for his commodious situation, is growne so rich, that these verses are growen to a common prouerbe among the Arabians;

As in a ring the welset stone appeereth to the eie,
Such to the worlds round-circle doth rich Ormus Iland lie.

A great portion of Arabia Fœlix belongeth to the principalitie of Ormus, as likewise Baharem, the Iland-queene within

within that gulfe for plentie, circuit, varietie of fruits; and the rich-fiſhing of pearle.

In this ſea the Portugals poſſeſſe Damain, Bazain, Tauaan, and Goa; which citie (to omit Chial, Canora, Cochin, and Colan) is of ſo great eſteeme, that it is thought to yeeld the king as great reuenue, as many prouinces in Europe do their Lords: and finally the Portugals hold all that ſea coaſt which lieth betweene the citie Damain, and Malepura: wherein no prince (except the king of Calecute) challengeth one foote of land. The Iland of Zeilan, wherein they poſſeſſe a ſtrong hauen and a Caſtle, commonly called Columbo, may rightly be called the delight of Nature; and they enioy alſo Malaca, which in thoſe places is the bound and limite of their empire, and alſo the key of the traffique, and nauigation of the eaſt Ocean, and of all thoſe Ilands, which are ſo many and ſo ſpacious, that in circuit of land they may be well compared to all Europe.

To continue their trade with the Chinois, and Ilanders of Tidore, and for their entercourſe to the Moluccas and Banda, they haue erected certaine ſtrong places in Amacan, but they reſemble rather Factories then Caſtles.

Certainely it would amaze a man to thinke, how many puiſſant kings and fierce nations are brideled and yoked by the armes of twelue thouſand Portugues; (for in ſo huge a tract of land and ſea, there are, nor euer were, a greater number inhabiting) and thoſe fewe, not onely to haue diſcouered, and conquered the Atlanticke, Indian, and eaſt ſea, but alſo euer ſince to keepe & defend the ſoueraignty thereof againſt all inuadors. For to their owne euerlaſting glory, and the praiſe, profit, and reputation of the whole Chriſtian common wealth, it is about 100. yeeres, ſithence they firſt ſet footing in thoſe territories, and to this day haue made good, whatſoeuer in that ſpace they haue formerly conquered. Neither can any man to the ecclipſing of this their deſerued commendation, obiect vnto them the facilitie of ſubduing a naked and vnarmed people, altogither raw and vnexperienced in the feates of armes; if he recall to his remembrance, how by the vertue of their armes, they tooke the kingdome of Ormus, from the

vaſſall and confederate of the king of Perſia; as alſo how they drowned and defeated at Diu the nauie of the Sultane of Egypt, fully furniſhed with Mammelukes, a kind of ſoldiery no leſſe famous for their valor and diſcipline, then the Prætorian Turkiſh Ianizaries: as alſo that they made good the ſaide place againſt the leaguer of the Turkes and Guzarits. In the Red ſea they haue often foiled the Turkiſh Armada: In the yeere 1552. they defeated his whole fleete at Ormus: In Trapoban they affronted the kings of Decan, Cambaia, Calecute, and Achem; princes fauored, and throughly aſſiſted with the forces of the ſaid Emperour: yea ſuch haue beene their expeditions in Cambaia, India, that whole Ocean, and along the coaſts of Aſia, that in deſert of glorie and admiration, they are to be cenſured nothing inferior to the victorious praiſes of *Alexander* the great; yea ſo much the rather to be preferred, becauſe neither in circuit of territorie, nor numbers of people they were euer comparable to the Macedonians; for with ninteene ſhips they ouerthrew the Egyptian nauie, far more powerfull in number and furniture: with two thouſand ſoldiers they forced Goa, and recouered it being loſt with 1500. with 800. they wonne Malaca, and not with many more, Ormus.

New world. Another member of the Spaniſh dominions lieth in the new World, wherein becauſe he hath no corriuall able to make head againſt him; he challengeth as his owne, whatſoeuer either by diſcouerie or conqueſt he attaineth vnto. This newe Worlds-dominions is diuided into Continent and Ilands.

In the north ſea are ſo many Ilands, (moſt of them of fortie miles compaſſe) that their number can hardly be aſcertained or knowne; and ſome of them are ſo rich and ſpacious, that they might ſuffice to erect a great and ſtately kingdome. Of theſe Boriquen is 300. miles long, and three ſcore broad: Iamias is little leſſe. Cuba is 300. leagues long, and twentie broad: Hiſpaniola is 1600. miles in compaſſe. As for the Continent he is abſolute lord of all that ſea coaſt which watereth Florida, Noua Hiſpania, Iucatan, and all that ſpacious ſouthern Peninſula, to the cape of California and Quiuira. For euen

ſo

ſo farre the diſcoueries and nauigations of the Spaniard haue pierced.

The coaſt of Noua Hiſpania counting his beginning at the towne of Santa Helena, and cutting by Panama to Quiuira, containeth about 5000. and 200. miles in length, to which if you pleaſe to adde the vpland regions coaſting towards the north, you ſhall finde no leſſe then 9000. miles. *Noua Hiſpania.*

Peru beginning at Panama, containeth by the maritimate coaſt 12000. and 600. miles: of which three thouſand lying betweene the riuer Maraguon, and the riuer of Plate, and including Braſile, doe acknowledge the ſoueraigntie of Portugall. *Peru.*

In the Continent are manie kingdomes and ſeigniories, amongſt which thoſe of Mexico and Peru (once moſt powerfull and wealthie dominions) were counted chiefe, and as it were two imperial ſoueraignties. The king of Mexico did not claime by inheritance from their anceſtors, but were choſen by ſixe electors; Him whom they iudged yoong, valiant, and wiſe, of an able bodie, and fit for the warre, they crowned: and one of their kings, becauſe he prooued a coward, ſlothfull, and irreſolute, they poiſoned. There was a Senate of Sages continually reſident about his perſon, which conſiſted of fower degrees of Nobilitie and Magiſtracies; without whoſe authoritie and priuitie, no matters of conſequence might be queſtioned or put in execution. They regarded nothing ſo ſeuerely, as the good education of their youth, their ceremonious ſuperſtitions, and their orders of ſoldiarie. There was amongſt them a woorthie chiefetaine called *Tlacaellel*, ſo expert in militarie proweſſe, that he ſubdued the greateſt part of the Mexican ſeigniorie: and of ſo great and admired ſpirit, that he obſtinately refuſed and forſooke the kingdome being offered him; ſaying, that it was auaileable and commodious for the common-weale, that another ſhould weare the crowne, and he attend vpon him as a miniſter and counſeller; and that his ſhoulders were too weake to ſuſtaine ſo weightie a burden: adding moreouer, that he would no leſſe imploie his care and endeuors for the ſafetie of the common-weale, then if he himſelfe were inueſted in the ſoueraigntie. *Mexico.*

Theſe

Theſe kings liued a long time in great maieſtie, inhabited ſumptuous palaces, and maintained a mightie troupe of their vaſſals for the guard of their perſons.

On one quarter they enlarged their bounds, and transferred their religion and language to the skirts of Teguante-Pecum, two hundred leagues remote from Mexico: and on another quarter as farre as Guatimall 300. leagues diſtant. In theſe places they made the north and ſouth ſeas their bounds; but Mecoican, Taſcalan, and Terpeacan, they could neuer bring vnder their yoke. Their differents with the citie of Taſcala, incouraged the Spaniards to inuade their dominions: and being entered, made their victorie eaſie, and the end fortunate: this happened in the yeere of our Lord 1518. This people (deuided into ſeauen tribes) came into thoſe regions, from that part of the north, where of late yeeres the Spaniards diſcouered a moſt wealthie and populous prouince, which at this day they call *new Mexico*.

Their chiefeſt delight conſiſted in warlike exerciſes, and thereby their people attained vnto titles of honor: *Metezuma* their laſt king inſtituted certaine bands of horſemen, the principall whereof he termed Lions, Ægles, and Leopards. Theſe he priuiledged to weare gold and ſiluer, and a ſilken caſſock after the Arabian faſhion; to go ſhod, and to occupy gilded and painted veſſell; which things were vtterly prohibited to the vulgar common people.

In the daies of *Inga* (once king of Peru) the eſtate of this Empire was far greater, then of later times: for in the higheſt fortune, it reached from Paſto to Chile 1000. leagues in length, and 100. in bredth, euen from the ſouth Ocean to Andi in the eaſt. The mercileſſe furie of the waters in ſome places ſtanding, and mooriſh, in other running gainſaid and put a period to their further progreſſes. When without any colorable or iuſt title they inuaded their confining neighbors, they moſt ridiculouſly pretended, that in an vniuerſall deluge, mankind was preſerued in themſelues onely, and therefore would haue the world beleeue that they onely retained true religion, which (as they ſaid) they were bound to ſowe & diſperſe in the mindes of all men, either by faire meanes or foule.

foule. Their chiefe god was *Viracoca*, that is to ſay, the Creator of all things; next vnto him they adored the Sunne. *Inga Pacacuti*, who inſtructed them in the greateſt part of their ſuperſtitions, when he had indowed the temples of the other gods with tithes and reuenues, aſſigned none to the temple of *Viracoca*, alleaging, that foraſmuch as he was the maker of all things, he needed not any thing.

Amongſt other memorable ordinances by him inſtituted in the winning of countries; one was, that the conquered land ſhould be diuided into three parts: the firſt was dedicated to the gods, and maintenance of the charge of their ceremonies: the ſecond and greateſt portion was giuen to *Inga*, therewith to maintaine his eſtate, the expences of his court, parents, barons, & garriſons: the third was diſtributed amongſt the ſoldiers: no man could claime propertie in any thing, to ſay this is mine; but by the fauour and ſufferance of *Inga*; neither might that deſcend by inheritance. The landes belonging to the people and comminaltie were yeerelie limited, and ſo much allotted to euery man, as might bee thought ſufficient for the ſuſtentation of his familie; ſome yeeres more, ſome leſſe, without exaction of any rent; in liew whereof, they conditioned to manure the lands of *Inga*, and the gods: the increaſe they ſtored in moſt ample garners thereunto appointed, from whence in time of ſcarcitie it was ſhared amõgſt the people; the like they did with their cattel, diuiding them by head: which point of gouernment in mine opinion farre exceedeth either the partitions of *Lycurgus*, or the Agragrian lawes of the Romaines.

Beſides merchandize, incredible treaſures of gold and ſil- *Riches.*
uer are tranſported out of Noua Hiſpania and Peru: of thoſe treaſures commonly Peru yeeldeth two parts, and Noua Hiſpania the third; which is more rich in marchandize then Mexico. Amongſt the reſt it yeeldeth Cochinella, a commoditie of ineſtimable value, and infinit ſtore of hides. The Ilands affoord plenty of hides, cotten wool, ſugar, cannafiſtula, hard wax and pearles.

Amongſt theſe riches and treaſures of Peru two things are woonderfull; one, that in the ſiluer mines which were diſcouered

uered in Potoſie, in the yeere 1545. there is, and hath beene found ſo huge a maſſe of Bullion, that the fift part (which is the kings) in the ſpace of fortie yeeres amounted to one hundred and eleuen millions of Pezoes: neither yet did two third parts pay their due to his maieſtie. The other is the quick-ſiluer mines in Guancaualcan, found in the yeere 1567. out of which the king hath receiued 40000. Pezoes, all charges defraied.

Braſil. It is a ſtrange thing to note, that whereas mother Nature hath interlaced ſo riotouſly her golden and ſiluer veines in the boſome and wombe of Peru, it hath beſtowed no ſuch bleſſing vpon her neereſt daughter Braſile; but in ſtead thereof hath inriched her with a moſt temperate and holſome aire, with many pleaſant ſprings and large riuers, not without ſufficiencie of wood: ſhe hath diuided the land into fruitefull plaines and delightſome hils, clothed it with the beautie of continuall greeneneſſe, abounding aboue beliefe with ſugar-canes, which the Portugals there planted, and now tranſport in infinite numbers into forreine regions.

Philippinæ. The Philippinæ may well be termed the appendances to this *New world*; for although in reſpect of their ſcite by reaſon of their proximitie, they may be thought a part of Aſia; yet the diſcouerers thereof trauelled through new Spaine, before they could diſcouer them; of which Ilands more then 40. are ſubiect to this ſoueraignetie, and by them haue been reduced to a ciuill kind of life and policie.

Now hauing generally run ouer the ſpacious (I will not ſay boundleſſe) members of this empire, let vs diuide the diſcourſe thereof (at leaſt as much as concernes their ſtrength and policie) into fower particulars: the firſt whereof ſhall intreate of his pieces in Europe; the ſecond of his dominions in the newe world; the third of his territories of the weſt and ſouth coaſt of Africke; the fourth of his principalities in India and Aſia.

The prouinces which he holdeth in Europe are of the moſt puiſſant and powerfull ſort, that are comprehended in this diuiſion. Spaine it ſelfe hath beene alway acknowledged for ſo wealthie, ſo puiſſant, & ſo ſpacious a kingdome, that not without

out

out good cauſe it may challenge the precedence of al the prouinces, of the continent, if not for any other conſideration, yet in regard that the Romaines and Carthaginians continued ſo long and ſo cruell wars for the poſſeſſion and royalty therof. The Gothes and Vandals (when with the ſtreames of their ouerflowing multitudes) they ſwarmed ouer the greateſt part of the Romaine empire, here ſat them down, & made it the place of their inhabitation. *Trebellius Pollio* termed it and France the ioints and ſinewes of the Romaine empire. *Conſtantine*, when he diuided the empire, preferred it before Italy: And in the diuiſion, when England, France, Spaine and Italie fell to his lot, he little eſteeming the laſt, and voluntarily leauing it to his competitor, contented himſelfe with the three formoſt. Who knoweth not that the kingdome of Naples is the flower of the Italian prouinces? Who ſeeth not, that nature hath confined & heaped into this territorie, as if it were into her cloſet, all thoſe delightfull happineſſes, which with her owne hands ſhe hath heere & there ſcattered & diſperſed through the reſidue of the European prouinces? what other report can be giuë of the duchie of Millain? then which there is no prouince more rich in graine, fruite, rice, cattell, whit-meats, wine and flaxe. Neither amongſt all the Ilands of the Mediterranean ſea, is there any territorie more commodiouſly ſeated, or better ſtored with multitudes of artificers, concourſe of merchants, ſtatelier in buildings, or better-peopled, larger, or more fertill, then the Iland of Sicil.

The gouernment is abſolute and kingly; matters of ſeuerall qualities are handled in ſeuerall counſels purpoſely ordained to that end: wherein the ſlow and conſiderate aduiſoes of *Fabius*, rather then the raſh and headie reſolutions of *Marcellus* are receiued. As much as may poſſibly be. Innouations and change of ancient cuſtomes are auoided, in regard whereof, *Innocent* the eight was woont to affirme, the Spaniſh nation to be ſo warie in their actions, that they ſeldome cõmitted any ouerſight therein. By this courſe the king rangeth vnder his obedience, Caſtillians, Arragons, Biſcains, Portugals, Italians, Germans, the New World, Chriſtians and Gentils, people vtterly different, in lawes, cuſtomes and natures, as if they *Gouernment.*

were all of one nation, and his naturall ſubiects.

And whereas ſome obiect, that this empire cannot long endure in ſo floriſhing an eſtate, becauſe the members thereof are ſo farre diſioyned: to ſuch obiections let this Maxime be oppoſed, *That ſpacious dominions are beſt preſerued againſt forrein attempts, and thoſe of meane capacitie haue the like aduantage againſt inteſtine misfortunes.* But in this empire thus diuided, ſpatiouſnes and mediocritie are well vnited. The ſpaciouſnes is apparant in the whole bodie compounded of ſeuerall members: the mediocritie in the greateſt part of the ſeuerall members. For ſeeing that the portions thereof (as Spaine, Peru, Mexico) are ſo great & goodly ſtates of themſelues, they cannot but be ſtored with all thoſe good things which are requiſite either for greatnes or mediocritie, that is to ſay, with a puiſſant vnion to reſiſt forreine attempts, and ſufficient inward force to prouide againſt domeſticall diſcontents. For who knoweth not, that by meanes of ſea-forces all theſe members may ſtrengthen one another, and ſtande as it were vnited, euen as *Ceſar Auguſtus*, by maintaining one fleete at Rauenna, and another at Meſſana, awed the whole Romaine empire, and kept it in aſſured tranquillitie: As alſo we haue ſeene the Portugals, by reaſon of their ſea-forces, which they maintained in Perſia, Cambaia, Decan, and other places of the Indies, not onely to haue giuen the lawe to thoſe famous princes, but maugre the force of their enimies to keepe it, and peaceably to enioy it to this day.

Sea forces. Some wiſe and experienced commanders in diſcourſing on this point, and oppoſing the iealouſie and æmulation of the Grand ſeignior, affirme, that, if the king ſhould imploy thoſe treaſures, which now he ſpendeth in the erecting of fortreſſes vpō the increaſe of his nauie; (an expence ſufficiēt for the furniſhing of 150. gallies) it would be an occaſion, that the Turk, whoſe nauie now exceedeth not the number of 130. gallies, woulde augment it to the number of 200. leaſt hee ſhoulde ſeeme to be inferior to the king in ſea forces, and thereby his maieſtie ſhould be drawn vnto an exceſſiue expence, & notwithſtanding, his reputation nothing augmented thereby: But that ſubtill, I will not terme it ſophiſticall argument, is

eaſily

easily answered, and let those men assure themselues that in action nothing is more dangerous then an ouerweening conceit of their owne wisdome. For it is not inough, barely to say, that the Grand seignior will be superior in sea forces, but wise men must weigh, whether it lie in his power so to do, or no. For although the Turke be Lord of a larger sea coast then the king, yet can he not compare with his Maiestie, either in furniture or mariners. Along all the coast of Africke he hath not an harbour, where he can builde or keepe a couple of gallies, except Algier and Tripolie. In the Euxine sea what place of name is there besides Capha & Trapezond? What better report can we giue to the coast of Asia? More implemẽts then a spacious sea-coast are incident to this busines: he must haue plenty of timber & cordage; he must be furnished with a people practised in sea affaires, able to endure the labour & working of the waters; delighting in traffique & nauigation; cheerfull in tempests & rough weather, which dare dwell as it were amongst perils, & expose their liues to a thousand dangers: as for the Turkish subiects the better part neuer saw sea, & those that haue vsed it, are not to be cõpared to the Biskains, Catalonians, Portugals, & Genowais; (I adde this people for their many good seruices done at sea in the behalfe of this crowne.) To conclude, in two things the king excelleth the Turke; the first is, that although the Turke can command more men, yet the best and greater part of them being Christians, he dare hardly trust against vs; the second is, that the sea coasts of the king are neerer conioyned, then those of the Turke, and in that regard are sooner assembled and prouided. By this commoditie, experience hath prooued, that the Easterne nauies haue beene often ouerthrowen by the Western, the Southern by the Northern, the Carthaginian by the Romaine, the Asian by the Grecian. *Octauius Cæsar* with the nauie of Italy defeated the fleete of Ægypt; and in our times the Armada of the Christians, the fleete of the Turkes. The Turkes themselues confesse, that in sea-fights the Christians excell, and are vnwilling to deale with those forces. As often as *Charles* the fift rigged foorth his nauie, it was so puissant, that the Turke neuer durst leaue the harbour. In his iourney of Algier he rigged

fiue hundred veſſels; in his Tunis voyage ſixe hundred. *Andrew Doria* conducted ſo gallant an armada into Greece, that the Turke not daring to mooue out of his ſtation, he tooke Patras and Corona in Morea.

Land forces.

His land-forces conſiſt in Caualrie and Infanterie: the beſt footeman of all the Germaine nations, is the Wallon: and it is well knowne that in all ages the ſpaniſh haue beene accounted one of the moſt valorous nations of the world. The French in nine yeeres were ſubdued to the Romane yoke; the Spaniards held out 200. The power and perſon both of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, were requiſite to the ſubduing of the Cantabrians, whereas they not onely deliuered their owne countrey from the ſubiection of the Moores, but inuaded Africke, and tooke therein many ſtrong places. So the Portugals inuaded Barbarie, tamed the coaſt of Guinea, Ethiopia and Cafraria; they conquered India, Malaca and the Moluccas: the Caſtilians ſayling through the Atlantike ſea ſubdued the New world, with all the kingdomes, prouinces and people therein: and finally droue the French from Naples, Sicill and Millan.

By three virtues they haue raiſed their good fortunes to this pitch of felicity, the firſt is temporiſing: for no people can readier finde the occaſion, and ſooner take or refuſe it when it is offered. The ſecond is celeritie, for through ſlothfulnes they let nothing ouerſlip; the third is loue and concord, for they were neuer knowen out of their owne borders to mutine or to ſtrike ſtroke amongſt themſelues: at a word, they are much inclined to melancholie, which makes them ſolemne in their conuerſation, ſlow and aduiſed in action: they loue complement, and ſtand much vpon apperance, preſuming greatly of themſelues, and exceedingly boaſting of their owne doings: and to maintaine their reputation they will imploy all they haue in furniture and apparel: in ſuffering of hunger, thirſt, heat, cold, labour and extremities, they will lay vp any nation in Europe. By theſe vertues they haue atchieued the glory of ſo many victories, and although ſometime they haue beene ouercome, notwithſtanding they haue vanquiſhed their vanquiſhers, as it fell out at Rauenna. They neuer ſuffered any famous defeature, but in the iournies of Algier and England; the

one

one by the caſualty of tempeſt; the other by the skilfull proweſſe and ſeafaring dexteritie of the Engliſh. Three or fower thouſand of them turned topſie turuie the better part of Germanie, and made way with their ſwords thorough the thickeſt of their enemies. In the iourney of Caruen in Barbarie being fower thouſand foote ſouldiers of great valour, they made a braue retraict the ſpace of fower or fiue miles, beſet and charged with twentie thouſand horſe by the king of the Moores at leaſt fiue or ſixe times, with the loſſe onely of 80. men, and the ſlaughter of 800. of the enimie. They ſerue better on foote then on horſeback, although they haue horſes of excellent corage, and better with the harquebuze, then with any other kind of weapon: with great care they will couer their loſſes and weakeneſſe.

As concerning their Caualrie, it cannot be gainſaid, but that the Spaniſh genet is the nobleſt horſe in Chriſtendome, far excelling the courſer of Naples, or the horſe of Burgundie ſo much eſteemed of the French; or the Frieſlander in ſo great requeſt with the Germans. It ſhould ſeeme that nature hirſelfe hath armed this people, in giuing them the iron mines of Biskay, Guipuſcua and Medina, with the temperature of Bayon, Bilbo, Toledo and Calatajut; the Armories of Millan, Naples and Boſcodueis; the corne and prouiſion of the inexhauſtible garners of Apulia, Sicill, Sardinia, Arteſia, Caſtile and Andeluzia, with the plentifull vintages of Soma, Calabria, San Martin, Aymont, and ſundrie other places. To conclude, this prince is ſo mightie in gold and ſiluer, that therewith (to ſpare his owne people, ingaged in the defence of ſo many territories, prouinces and frontires, from vndoubted deſtruction) he is able to wage what numbers of horſemen and footmen of the Germaine and Italian nations it pleaſeth him.

Borderers.

The princes whoſe dominions are bordering, and in regard of their forces are any way able to indanger his dominions, are the Venetians, the kings of France and England, and the Turke. The Venetians (long ſince the Duchie of Millan came to the poſſeſſion of this crowne) haue ſet them downe great quietnes, rather looking to the ſtrengthning and keeping

The Venetians.

ing

ing of their owne townes and pieces, then to the winning of others from their neighbours. And good reason it is, sithence peace is the sureſt ankor-hold of their common-wealth, that they ſhould eſchue all occaſions of warre with their friendes and allies. For we haue ſeene the Spaniſh, in fauour of the Venetians (when their ſtate ſtood dangerouſly ingaged with the wars of *Baiazet*, *Soliman*, and *Selim* the ſecond) cheerefully and reſolutely to haue entred into the action at Cephalonia, Preuiſa and Lepanto, when neuertheleſſe at the ſame inſtant they had at their owne doores, Algier, Tunis and Aphrodiſium their dangerous enimies, neerer affronting Spaine, Sicill, Sardinia, the Baleares, and the kingdome of Naples, then Cipres, or the Ilands of the Ionian ſea.

France. Concerning France, they are not to be blamed if by wiſhes and Ieſuiticall ſedition they could annexe it to their crowne: but ſaith one of their owne writers, they may long enough deſire it, before they ſhall be able to effect it. And ſithence the French haue put an end to their ciuill diſcontents, what trophee, or what triumph can the Spaniard boaſt to haue carried from them. Indeed it cannot be denied, but in elder daies the warines of the Spaniards hath turned the furious attempts of the French to matter of too-late repentance. For the great Captaine ſurpriſing Barletta, and then incamping vpon the bankes of Gariglano, firſt tooke from them the poſſeſſion of the kingdome of Naples, and afterwards all hope of regaining it againe. By the ſame temporizing *Anthonie Leua* wearied king *Francis* at Ticinum, and *Proſper Colonna* cleered the Duchie of Millan. In aſſaulting of townes and fortreſſes, I confeſſe furie to be of great moment; I confeſſe likewiſe that by this vertue the French preuailed at Ioious, Momedium and Caleis; but in ſet battels, as at Graueling, Saint Quintins, and Siena, moſt commonly they haue had the foile: for in the field good order and skilfull conduction doth more preuaile then valour and furious reſolution: in aſſaults, furie and reſolution, more then counſell or temporizing. Since their falling at variance with the Engliſh, at their hands they haue receiued more diſhonour, then in the wars of any other nation. As to detract from the fame and well deſeruing glory

of

of any Christian nation, argueth rather an enuious humour, then an vnpartiall writer: so to passe the bounds of modestie in any action deserueth no lesse a reprehension. For who acknowledgeth not their discoueries of the Indies to be woonderfull; their conquests therein maruellous; their treasures inestimable; their continuance in wars long, as being nouzeled therein since the infancie of *Charles* the fifth: the braue prouinces of Italy and Flanders annexed to their crowne to be matter of goodly consequence. But let vs marke and consider their fortunes, sithence they vnsheathed their swords against the Christian world, as we shall soone see, that their treasures, their Armadas, their long experienced Infanterie, and their conquered prouinces, haue little or nothing augmented; nay haue they not discountenanced their reputation in these parts? By the expence of infinite millions of gold, and effusion of so much Christian bloud, what hath he gained in France? What in Netherland? The world seeth *England.* more cleere then day light, that for all their great boasts, their large territories, and infinite treasures, sithence the English haue delt with them, held them at the staues ende, and discouered their weaknes; euerie birde hath pulled a feather, their credite is broken with the bankers of Germanie; holds giuen ouer for want of pay; their sea forces foiled (if not as they say discomfited.) In the yeere 1586. Sir *Francis Drake* forced the towne of Saint Domingo in Hispaniola, Saint Augustines, and Carthagena on the continent. And when in reuenge of like pretended iniuries they entred the English channell with their inuincible armada of 150. sailes, by the fauour of God and valour of the English, they were driuen home without doing any thing worth remembrance, through vnknowen seas, with the losse, taking and sinking of one hundred of their best and tallest vessels. To requite this brauado, and to teach this proud nation that the English (contrarie to their opinion) were as well able to offend as defend: in the yeere 1589. they shewed their victorious nauie of 126. ships before the Groin in Galizia, assaulted the base towne, woone it, and with 6000. soldiers at the bridge of Berges discomfited sixteene thousand: thence weighing ankor, and sayling

ling alongst the coast and sight of Spaine, landed at length at Pinoche in Portugall, woon the castell, marched fiftie miles into the lande, kept their Courts of guard in the suburbs of Lisbon, and thence returning to Caskaies without any great fight or skirmish tooke the castell, set sayle for England, and in their returne landing at Vigo, tooke the towne and wasted the countrey. Now sithence their great and considerate care of future preuention both for Spaine and the Indies; their ships burnt and taken; their galleies put to flight, Porto Rico woon by assault, Cales sacked, and the Flemish by our trauels incouraged to strip him of his trade of Spicerie, may well put them in remembrance what they haue receiued at the hands of the English, sithence their first ambitious apprehension of the western Emperie. What the Turke is able to performe, you may read hereafter in the discourse of Turkie.

The Turk.

Portugall.

THis kingdome which is not aboue 320. miles long, and sixtie broad, not very populous, and but meanely rich in essential reuenues, yet by reason of the commodious scituation for nauigation and acquisition, it hath equalized these wants with surplusage with the most famous prouinces of the whole world: yea, this good fortune hath so elated their mindes, that they haue vndertaken diuers famous expeditions into Barbarie, Ethiopia, India and Brasile. Within these 90. yeeres they haue taken and fortified the principall places and harbours of those prouinces, chalenging vnto themselues the peculiar traffique of the Atlantike and east Ocean. They seised vpon the Terceraz, knowing that without touching at those Ilands no ship could safely passe into Ethiopia, India, Brasil, or the New-world. Returning from those countries towards Spaine or Lisbone, they put in to releeue their wants, and sicke *passengers, and outward they touch to take in fresh water*, and fetch the winde. In Africke they are Lords of those places which we spake of before in the description of Spaine. In Persia they haue Ormus: in Cambaia, Diu, Damain and Bazain:

in

in the hither India, Chaul, Goa, and the neighbour fortreſſes of Cochin, Colan, the Iland Mauar, and the hauen Columbo in the Iland Zeilan. Amongſt theſe Goa is the chiefeſt, as the place where the Viceroy keepeth his court. Ormus famous for the iuriſdiction of the ſea, and the traffique of the Perſian and Cambaian gulfes. Cochin and Colan for their plentie of pepper. Mauar, for the pearle-fiſhing. Columbo, for the abundance of Cinnamon. Damain and Bazain, for fertile prouiſion. In theſe quarters they haue ſome princes their confederates, others their feodaries. The chiefe and wealthieſt of Allies, is the king of Cochin, ſometime tributarie to the king of Calecute, but now by the intercourſe and traffique with the Portugals, he is growen ſo rich and mightie, that the other princes do enuie his proſperitie. The king of Colan is likewiſe their confederate.

Their chiefe force conſiſteth in ſcituation and ſtrength of places, and in the number and goodnes of their ſhipping. As concerning ſcituation, this people wiſely conſidering that in regard of their contemtible numbers, they were not of power to make any famous iourney into the inland regions neither able to match the Perſians, the Guzarits, the princes of Decan, the king of Narſinga, and other barbarous potentates in Campania, turned all their cogitations to immure themſelues in ſuch defenſiue places, that therein with ſmall forces they might euer haue hope to diuert great attempts, & make themſelues Lords and commanders of the ſea and nauigation: which when they had done, they intertained and maintained ſo ſtrong a nauie, that no prince in thoſe parts was able to wrong them, yea, they furniſhed thoſe veſſels ſo throughly, that one ſingle ſhip would not refuſe to cope with three or fower of the Barbarians. With this Armada of one and twentie ſhips, *Francis Almeida* defeated the Mamelucks neere the towne of Diu. *Alfonſe Alburquerck* with thirtie great ſhips woone Calecute: with one and twentie he tooke Goa, and regained it with fower and thirtie: with three and twentie he tooke Malaca with ſixe and twentie he entred the red ſea; and with two and twentie recouered Ormus. In proceſſe of time, as their mightines increaſed, *Lopes Zuarezius* made a *Forces.*

iourney into the red sea with seuen and thirtie Galleons. *Lopes Sequeira* with twentie fower ships, but with greater number of soldiers then euer before, laid siege to Gnidda in the red sea: *Henrie Menesius* wasted Patane with fiftie shippes. *Lopes Vazius Sampaius* left in the Arsenall 136. vessels of war, whereof the greatest part were excellent well furnished. *Nonius Acunia* vndertooke a iourney to Diu with three hundred ships, wherein were three thousand Portugals, and fiue thousand Indians, besides a great number of his guard and seruants, which ordinarilie follow the Viceroyes in those countries.

Confederates. Borderers.

Besides his confederates and feodaries, he is confined with most mightie princes, his enimies, as the *Persian*, who chalengeth Ormus as holden of him in vassalage: the *king of Cambaia*, who maketh title to Diu and other places, which were once vnder his iurisdiction: *Nizzamaluc* and *Idalcam* (for so the Portugals call the two princes of Decan) and the kings of *Calecute* and *Narsinga*.

As for the kings of *Persia* and *Narsinga*, they neuer waged warre against the Portugals, because they haue alwaies had to doe with more dangerous enimies: other princes though they haue enterprized to their vttermost to regaine Diu, Chial, Goa, and other places, and haue left no meanes vnattempted to bring their desseignes to effect, yet their abilitie could not worke any prosperous successe to their laborious indeuors, by reason of the places scituate so commodiously for the transportation and receit of continuall succours from the sea. And though they haue vndertaken the like actions in the deepe of winter, hoping by tempests and other casualties to barre the Portugals from their sea succours, yet they neuer preuailed, because the ships and courages of the Portugals, the one resolute to indure the siege, and by patience to ouercome, the other determining (hap what may) neuer to forsake their distressed countrey-men, haue set all vpon hazard, and exposed their fortunes to the mercie of winde and waues in those tempestious seasons. Their woorst, greatest and fiercest enimie is the Turke, (who being backed with the like aduantage of scituation, which the city of Aden affoordeth

affoordeth him) and ſometime pricked on by his proper enuie, emulation, and ambition, ſometime egged on by the perſwaſions of the king of Cambaia, hath often indeuored to diſpoile them of the ſoueraignetie of the redde ſea, and finally to driue them out of the eaſt India. The greateſt nauie that euer he ſent againſt them was to recouer *Diu*, conſiſting of ſixtie fower ſhips, but by them defeated. Afterwards he ſent a nauie of greater ſhips to the conqueſt of Ormus, and that likewiſe was almoſt wholie beaten, bruiſed, and drowned.

In the further Indies they hold nothing but Malaca and the Moluccas. In times paſt Malaca was far greater then nowe it is: for it lay ſcattered three miles alongſt the ſea coaſt, but the Portugals, that they might the better defend it, haue brought it into a round forme, containing not aboue a mile in compaſſe. Heere the king hath two puiſſant enimies, *Ior* and *Achem*, the one mightie at land, the other farre mightier at ſea, by whom the towne not without great danger hath more then once beene beſieged, but by the aide ſent from India alwaies releeued, with great ſlaughter of the enimie. At length *Paul Lima* defeated king *Ior*, and raced the caſtle built by him neere Malaca, wherein beſides other ſpoiles he found 900. braſen caſt peeces. This territorie is ſubiect to great danger, by reaſon of the puiſſance of this king of *Achem*, bending all his cogitations to the rooting and finall deſtruction of the Portugals out of this prouince, and therefore the king of Spaine of late yeeres ſent *Matthias Alburquerk* with a great power into India, with authoritie to ſecure the territorie of Malaca, and to fight with the king of *Achem*.

To ſecure their trade of ſpice and nutmegs in the Moluccas and Banda, they built a caſtle in the Iland Ternate, of late yeeres for want of ſuccours deliuered vp to the Mahumetans, and the Portugals reculed into the Iland of Tidore, there eſtabliſhing their trade and factorie.

The great Turke.

VNder the Empire of the Turkes is comprehended the better part of the ancient three-
Europe. fold diuiſion of the earth. He holdeth in *Europe* the whole ſea coaſt, which from the borders of *Epidaurus* ſtretcheth it ſelfe to the mouth of *Tanais:* whatſoeuer lieth betweene *Buda* and *Conſtantinople*, and from the *Euxine* ſea to the banks of *Sauus*, is his. In that perambulation is contained *Hungarie*, all *Boſnia*, *Seruia*, *Bulgaria*, *Macedon*, *Epire*, *Greece*, *Peloponneſe*, *Thrace*, and the *Archipelago* with the Ilands. He holdeth
Aſia. in *Aſia* and *Afrike* all that is betweene *Velez de la Gomera* and *Alexandria in Egypt*, betweene *Bugia* and *Guargula*, betweene *Alexandria* and the citie *Siene:* and from the citie *Suez* as far as *Swachen*. The hugenes of this territorie may be imagined by the circuit of ſome of the parcels. *Paulus Meotis* (which is wholy his) ſpreadeth it ſelfe one thouſand miles into the land: two thouſand and ſeuen hundred miles do hardly incompaſſe the *Euxine* ſea. The coaſt of the *Mediterranean* ſea (as much as is ſubiect to him) containeth in circuit 8000. miles. Egypt, wholy his, is eſteemed fiue hundred miles long. From *Tauris* to *Buda* is 3000. and 200. miles: ſo farre it is from *Derbent* vpon the *Caſpian* ſea, to *Aden* vpon the red ſea; and from *Balſara* vpon the *Perſian* gulfe, to *Tremiſſen* in *Barbarie*, is accounted little leſſe then 4000. miles. In the ſea he is Lord of the moſt noble Ilands of *Cyprus*, *Euboea*, *Rhodes*, *Samos*, *Chio*, *Lesbos*, and many other in the *Archipelago*.

In this progreſſe are contained many moſt puiſſant kingdomes, abounding with all ſorts of ſuſtenance for the vſe of man. What prouince is richer in corne then *Egypt*, *Africke*, *Syria* and *Aſia*? What region more flowing with all good things then *Hungarie*, *Greece* and *Thrace*? In theſe prouinces he hath fower cities of ineſtimable wealth, *Conſtantinople*, *Cair*, *Aleppo* and *Tauris*, *Conſtantinople* exceedeth all the cities in *Europe* in populouſnes: for it is thought that there are therein

therein more then ſeuen hundred thouſand perſons; which if it be true, it is twice as much as may be ſaide of *Paris*, *Aleppo* is a great citie in *Syria*, and the ſtaple of the whole traffique of *Aſia*. *Tauris* was the ſeate of the kings of *Perſia*, but taken from them in our daies, and thought to containe more then two hundred thouſand perſons. Amongſt all the cities of *Africke*, *Cair* by many degrees may challenge the principality, though ſome men compare *Cano* to it for greatnes. This citie may well be called the garner, not onely of *Egypt*, but of the greater part of *Africke* and *India*, whoſe treaſures (being conueied firſt by the red ſea, and from thence ouer land to *Cair* vpon the backs of camels) are at length diſtributed through all the regions of the *Mediterranean* ſea.

This Empire from ſmall beginnings hath riſen to ſuch greatnes, partly by their owne armes, partly by the diſcords of the Chriſtians, that at this day it is the onely-terror of the Chriſtian common-wealth. Sithence thoſe beginnings it hath beene their hereditarie practiſe, to ſtande vpon their guard, to preuent their enimies; in their iourneies to vſe admirable celeritie; to keepe their forces readie, and at hand; not to haue many irons at one time in the fire; nor long to manage warre with one nation, leaſt by practiſe they become better warriors then themſelues; not to ſpend their time and treaſure in voyages of baſe account; nor at one caſt to ſet at al, but to proceede leiſurely and aduiſedly; and, which is not the leaſt policie amongſt many, that their princes march in perſon in moſt of their iourneies. Diuers other leſſons they obſerue, by which in the ſpace of 300. yeeres they haue attained vnto a moſt mightie dominion, and that too, ſithence the yeere 1500. to this day, they haue almoſt doubled.

Their gouernment is meerely tyrannicall: for the great Turke is ſo abſolute a Lord of all things contained within the bounds of his dominions, that the inhabitants doe account themſelues his ſlaues, not his ſubiects: no man is maſter of himſelfe, much leſſe of his houſe wherein he dwelleth, or of the field which he tilleth, excepting certaine families in Conſtantinople, to whom for ſome good ſeruice, immunitie was graunted by *Mahumet* the ſecond. Neither any man be he *Gouernment.*

neuer

neuer ſo great, ſtandeth ſecure of his life, his goods or eſtate, longer then *Durante beneplacito* of the Grand-Seignior. By two policies he eſtabliſheth this tyrannicall gouernment; firſt by diſfurniſhing the people of weapons; ſecondly by putting all commands into the hands of renegados, whom he taketh as tithe from their parents in their childhood. By this ſubtilty he gleaneth the prouinces of the flower and ſinewes of their ſtrength, (for the likelieſt and ableſt ſpringals are choſen:) and ſecondly, with the ſame meanes he armeth himſelfe and ſecureth his eſtate. For theſe yong lads being taken from the laps of their parents, and deliuered to the trayning of this or that ſchoolemaſter, are made Mahumetans before they perceiue it, and ſo by reaſon of their yoong yeeres forgetting their father and mother, depend wholy vpon the pleaſure of the Grand-Seignior, yeelding him all duetifull and acceptable ſeruice, as their maintainer and aduancer to honour and riches.

Forces. His forces conſiſt in horſemen, footemen, ſhipping, corne and treaſure. As touching his treaſure, it is generally receiued, that he inioyeth little leſſe then eight millions of ordinarie reuenue. And where ſome men thinke, that out of ſo large a dominion a greater renenue may be raiſed, therein they deceiue themſelues; for not calling to remembrance, that the Turkes giue their minds to nothing but warre, nor take care of any thing elſe but prouiſion of armour and weapons: courſes fitter to deſtroy and waſte, then to preſerue and inrich prouinces. Hereupon to giue courage to their armies, & to continue them in the loue and liking of warfare, they ſuffer them to pill & ſpoile the people, hardly leauing them wherewith to hold life and ſoule together. And therefore the poore men not ſure of ſo much as their houſhold prouiſions; much leſſe of their wealth (which by time and induſtrie they may gather) take no more paines about their husbandrie and traffique, then they needs muſt; yea no more then their owne neceſſitie, as neere as they can, ſhall inforce them to make cleere at the yeers end. For ſay they, why ſhould we ſow, and another reape? Or why ſhould we reape, and another deuoure the reward of our labours? This is the cauſe, that in the Ottaman dominions, you ſhall

ſhall ſee admirable huge woods, all things laid waſte, few cities well peopled, and eſpecially the better part of the fields lie vnmanured. In our countries by the abundance of people ariſeth the deerenes of victuals, and in Turkie through the ſcarſitie of inhabitants. The greateſt number of the husbandmen periſh with carrying prouiſion and other neceſſaries to the remote places, through which their armies are to trauell. In their galleies likewiſe falleth moſt commonly ſo great mortalitie, that of ten thouſand rowers haled from their houſes, ſcant the fourth part returneth againe. This the rather happeneth, becauſe the Turkes in winter time moring their galleies, do not inure their ſeamen and gally-ſlaues to the change of aire and diſcommodities of the tempeſtuous ſeas in that ſeaſon.

Merchandize.

The whole trade of merchandize for the moſt part is in the hands of Iewes, or Chriſtians of Europe, Epidaurians, Venetians, Frenchmen and Engliſhmen. In ſo large a territorie as the Turke hath in Europe, there is neuer a famous Marttowne but Conſtantinople, Capha and Theſſalonica: in Aſia, but Aleppo and Damasko, Tripoli and Adena: in Africke, Cair, Alexandria and Algier.

Reuenues.

Although the ordinarie reuenues are no greater then aforeſaid, yet the extraordinarie ariſe to a greater reckoning, and that by confiſcations and preſents. For the Baſſas and great officers, as it were Harpyes, ſucke the very bloud of the people, and after they haue heaped vp ineſtimable riches, for the moſt part they eſcheat to the coffers of the grand Seignior. It is reported that *Imbrain Baſſa* carried from Cair ſixe millions, and *Mahomet Viſier* a farre greater maſſe. *Ochiali* beſides his other riches had three thouſand ſlaues. The Sultana, ſiſter to *Selim* the ſecond, receiued daily two thouſand fiue hundred Chechins; and for the eaſe of pilgrims and trauellers iournying between Cair and Mecha, ſhe began to trench a water-courſe all alongſt the way: an enterpriſe ſurely great chargeable and maieſticall.

Donatiues.

To raiſe his donatiues to a high reckoning, it is a cuſtome, that no ambaſſador appeere before him emptie handed: no man may looke for anie office or honourable preferment, if money be wanting: no generall may returne from his prouince

uince or iourney without his presents; and you must thinke that so magnificent a prince will not swallow small trifles.

The Vaiuods of Valachia, Moldauia and Transiluania hold their estates by vertue of this briberie, and yet they are often changed. For the estates are giuen to the best chapmen, who againe to make good their daies of paiment, oppresse the people, and bring the commons to extreme pouertie. Notwithstanding all this, we haue seene the Persian warre to haue drawne drie his coffers, and emptied his treasuries. Not long sithence, both at Constantinople and through the whole empire, the value of gold was raised aboue beleefe, insomuch that a Chechin of gold went for double his value, and the allay of gold and siluer was so much abased, that the Ianizars finding themselues agreeued thereat, brought great feare not onely vpō the inhabitants, but also to the grand-Seignior, in threatning that they would set fire on Constantinople. In Aleppo 60. thousand ducats were taken vp of the merchants in the name of the grand-Seignior.

Although his reuenues are not so great, as the spatious firtill apprehension of so mightie an empire may seeme to obiect; yet hath he an assistance of greater value then his surest reuenues, and that is his Timars or stipendaries. For the Ottaman princes seize vpon all the land which they take from their enimies, and assigned a small parcell, peraduenture none at all, to the ancient lords, diuide the residue into Timars, to euery gallant seruitor a portion; but vpon condition, to finde so and so many seruiceable horse for the warre. Therein consisteth the chiefest preseruation of the Ottaman empire: for vnlesse vpon this consideration the care of manuring the land were committed to the soldiers, and they againe set it ouer to others for their vse and lucre, all would lie waste through the whole empire: themselues affirming that wheresoeuer the grand-Seignior once treadeth with his horse hoofe, if it were not for this course, there neuer after would grow grasse againe. With these Timars he maintaineth 150. thousand horsemen, excellent well armed, and alwaies readie at their owne charges to march whither their leaders will command them. So great a caualrie can no other prince maintaine

Timars.

Horsemen.

maintaine with the yeerely expence of fowerteene millions of gold. Which maketh me woonder, that ſome writers comparing the Turkiſh receits with the Chriſtians, neuer ſpeake word of ſo huge a member of the Turkiſh puiſſance. It is reported, that in the warre of Perſia, the Turke conquered ſo much land, that thereof he erected fortie thouſand Timars, & a new exchequer at Tauris, from whence he receiueth yeerely a million of gold. The inſtitution of theſe Timars, and the chooſing of the Azamogli (for ſo they terme the yoong lads whom they meane to make Ianizars) are as it were the verie arches or pillars of this Empire. And heerein they ſeeme to haue imitated the Romaine policie. For the Romaine Emperors did alwaies inure their citizens to the warre, and of them conſiſted the Pretorian Cohorts, which neuer departed from the Emperors perſon. *Tacitus* ſaith, that the election of the yoong men which was made in this maner, gaue the occaſion of the Batauian reuolt. In the Romaine Empire Timars or ſtipends were giuen to the ſoldiers *in vſe*, as rewards of their good ſeruice, and they were termed *Beneficia*, and the leſſees, *beneficiarij*. *Alexander Seuerus* confirmed them to the heires of his ſoldiers, but vpon condition, that they ſhoulde be alwaies readie to ſerue, otherwiſe not. *Conſtantine* the great made them hereditarie without exception or limitation. *Azamogli*

By theſe infinite troups of horſe the Grand-Seignior worketh two exceeding politike effects through the whole Empire: by the firſt he ſo aweth his ſubiects, that they can no ſooner ſtirre, but as ſo many falcons theſe Timorats are preſently on their necks; and this is the drift of diſperſing them through the prouinces: the ſecond is, that one part of them are alwaies ready at the ſound of the trumpet vpon al occaſions to march, while the other ſtay at home to keepe the inhabitants in duty and obedience.

Beſides this Caualrie, he entertaineth in continuall paie great numbers of horſemen diuided into Spachi, Vlufagi, and Caripici: theſe are as it were the nurſerie from whence ſpringeth the degrees of Baſſas, Beglerbeis and Sangiaks. Then hath hee his Auxiliaries, the Alcanzi, the Tartars, the

Walachians and Moldauians.

Footemen The other pillar of his eſtate is his Infanterie, conſiſting of footemen, by them termed Ianizars. In them, two properties are to be noted; their *birth place and practiſe*. As concerning their birth-place, they are not choſen out of Aſia, but Europe: for they euer accounted the Aſians effeminate and cowardly, alwaies more ready to flie then willing to fight; but the Europians, hardy, couragious and good men of warre. The Aſians they terme after their owne name, Turkes, the Europians Rumi, that is, Romans.

Their birth-place.

Their training and practiſe. As concerning their practiſe, they are taught when they are yoong; and therefore no maruell if as they grow in age, ſo they increaſe in ſtrength, actiuitie and courage; for theſe three vertues make a perfect ſoldier. The tithing of ſpringals is made euery third yeere, vnleſſe occaſion conſtraine a quicker election, as it happened in the Perſian warre, wherein they were forced not onely to make more haſte then ordinarie, but alſo compelled to take vp Turkiſh Azamoglani, which was neuer ſeene put in practiſe before. When theſe yoong lads are brought to Conſtantinople, they are ſuruiewed by the captaine of the Ianizars, who regiſtreth their names, their parents and countrey in tables. From thence ſome are ſent into Natolia and other prouinces to learne their law and language, where being nouzled in the ſuperſtitions and cuſtomes of them with whom they conuerſe, they turne Mahumetans, before they be of diſcretion to diſcerne good from euill. Another ſort is diſtributed in the offices of the Seraglio; the third ſort of the faireſt complexions and comlieſt proportion are appointed to ſeruices in the port of the grand Seignior. During the time that they are accounted Azamoglani, they haue no certaine gouernour, nor trained vp in preſcript orders, but ſome are ſet to keepe gardens, ſome to manure the fields, others to learne manuell occupations, and diſpatch houſhold buſineſſe. At riper and abler yeeres they are called into the ſchooles of the Azamoglani, (for ſo they are ſtill termed till they are inrolled in the ſeroule of Ianizars) and then deliuered ouer to preſcribed ſcholemaſters, who traine them vp in exerciſes of labour and trauell, allowing them ſpare diet and thinne

thinne clothing: they ſleepe in ſpatious lodgings, not vnlike the monaſteries of religious perſons, where likewiſe they haue their ouerſeers, without whoſe licence they dare not depart from their appointed places. Here they learne to ſhoote in the bow and harquebuſe, or to handle any weapon they haue moſt minde vnto, and when they haue wel profited in any profeſſion, they are inrolled in the roll of the Ianizars, or Spachy. For their maintenance the one ſort are allowed no leſſe then fiue aſpers, nor more then eight a day, the other, ten. Being inrolled for Ianizars, immediately they enter into action, to garriſons, or to wait in the Port. The later ſort haue three moſt ſpatious houſes like monaſteries appointed them for their abiding place, and there euery one liueth vnder the gouernment of his ſuperior of the ſame order, the yoonger ſeruing the elder in buying and dreſſing his prouiſion, and ſuch like ſeruices, with obedience, good will, and incredible ſilence. Thoſe of one order eate at one table, and ſleepe togither as it were in long cloiſters. If any one vpon occaſion chance to be out of his lodging but one night, the euening following he is well baſtinaded, and that with ſo great ſeueritie and patience, that after correction he holds it no diſgrace to kiſſe the hand of his gouernour. In their iournies and expeditions, they account it religious ſeruice to ſpoile the cottages and houſes of the Chriſtians, who muſt not finde fault with any outrage: whatſoeuer they bargaine for they muſt carrie it at their owne prices. They are ſubiect to no Iudge, but their Aga, and he neither can giue iudgement of life and death vpon any of them, but in caſes of ſedition and mutinies, and that ſeldom, and very ſecretly. They inioy many immunities and priuileges, they are crocched to, and feared of all men, ſome of them are appointed to conuerſe with ambaſſadors, others to accompanie trauellers, eſpecially thoſe of honeſt reputation, for their ſecuritie throughout the Turkiſh dominions. The election of the emperor is in their power; for vnleſſe they approoue and proclaime the election, the inſtalment and inueſture is of no force. Euery emperor comming to the crowne giueth them ſome donatiue, and augmenteth their pay. In any dangerous warre, part of them go foorth with their Aga, or his lieutenant, but theſe are the laſt

Their allowance.

Their licentious libertie.

Their priuiledges.

men that come to blowes. There is not amongſt the Turkiſh honors, an office more ſubiect to enuie and ielouſie then this captainſhip; for he and the Begler-bey of Greece may not chooſe their lieutenants, but the grand Seignior onely: the generall fauour of the Ianizars is his aſſured deſtruction. Their number commonly is fower and twentie thouſand, but in our times they carrie not their woonted reputation, becauſe both Turkes and Aſians are inrolled for Ianizars, whereas in former ages none were admitted but the Europian Chriſtians: beſides, contrarie to their ancient cuſtome, they marrie wiues, and that without reſtraint or limitation. By their long reſidence about Conſtantinople (then which there is not a more effeminate citie in the whole world) they are growne vile, baſe, and men of ſmall ſeruice, yea lazie, inſolent, and proud aboue meaſure. It is a common ſaying, that in their proweſſe and diſcipline conſiſteth the floriſhing eſtate of their empire, but the argument were eaſie to diſprooue that opinion.

Their number.

Azapi. Beſides his Ianizars he hath the Azapi, a baſe Beſonio, fitter for the ſpade then the ſword, intertained rather with numbers to tire, then by proweſſe to defeat armies, oppoſing them to all dangerous ſeruices, yea to fill trenches with their carcaſes, and to make bridges of their ſlaughtered bodies for the Ianizars to paſſe ouer to the breaches. And as the Romaines had their Legions and Auxiliaries; the one the flower of their chiualrie, the other as an aide or augmentation: euen ſo the Turke accounteth his ſtipendarie horſemen and Timarots the ſinewes of his armies; the Alcanzi (ſuch as he preſſeth out of townes and villages) ſcarcrowes, and for oſtentation: the Ianizars as the Pretorian legions, and the Azapi as a rabble of pedants.

Sea forces. Now a word or two of his ſea forces: There is no prince furniſhed with better meanes for building of ſhips then this prince: for not onely the woods of Epire and Cilicia, but alſo of Nichomedia and Trapezond are ſo huge, ſo thicke, and full of tall trees, fit for all ſorts of buildings, that a man would take the trunkes falling by violence of ſtorme from the banks of the woodes of Nichomedia into the Euxin ſea, to bee triremes alreadie built and framed. They can want no workemen

Timber.

Ship-wrights.

men to fit and ſquare their timber; for vile couetouſnes hath drawne whole flocks of Chriſtian ſhipwrights into their Arſenals. The yeere after his defeature at Lepanto, he ſhewed his nauie whole and intire, yea itching to cope with the Chriſtian Armada. Neither can he want a competent number of expert mariners: for out of the gallies which he maintaineth in Leſbo, Rodes, Ciprus and Alexandria, and from the hauens of Tunis, Bugia and Algier, he is able to draw a ſufficient proportion of ſea-men and gally-ſlaues, as often as occaſion requireth to furniſh his royall armie. The experience hereof we haue ſeene at Malta, at Lepanto, and Goletta. *Galiy-ſlaues.*

Of warlike furniture his ſtore is infinite; his Ordinance innumerable: out of Hungarie he carried fiue thouſand: in Ciprus he woone fiue hundred: at Goletta fewe leſſe. The ſiege of Malta, wherein they diſcharged threeſcore thouſand bullets, may well declare their abundance of powder and ſhot: at Fawagaſta they diſcharged 118. thouſand: at Goletta in 39. daies they raſed with their vnceſſant vollies, a fortification which was fortie yeeres in building by our people: in the laſt Perſian warre *Oſman Baſſa* drew after him fiue hundred field pieces. Where euer they come, they neuer ceaſe playing with their Ordinance, till they haue laide all leuell with the ground; if that preuaile not, they fall to mining; if that faile, they go to worke with ſpade and pickaxe; if that too, they will neuer giue ouer till they haue filled the ditches with the bodies of their ſlaughtered ſoldiers. They haue three things wherewith they terrifie the whole world: multitudes of men, vnconquerable: militarie diſcipline, vncorrupted: of corne and prouiſions, ſtore infinite. Multitudes in times paſt haue bred confuſion, and commonly we haue ſeene great armies ouerthrowen by ſmall numbers, but the Turkiſh multitudes are managed with ſo good order, that although it be farre more eaſie to range a ſmall armie then a great, yet euen in order haue their great armies excelled our ſmall; ſo that I muſt needs conclude, that they goe far beyond vs both in diſcipline and numbers; herein giuing place no not to the ancient Romanes; much leſſe to any moderne nation how warlike ſoeuer. And this their due commendation conſiſteth not *Munition.* *Courage, Diſcipline, Prouiſion.*

onely

onely in armes; but in thirſt, patience, and hard diet: as for wine, by their law they are vtterly forbidden it. In the fielde euerie ten ſoldiers haue their corporall, to whom without any grudging they dutifully obey. You ſhall neuer ſee woman in their armies; their ſilence is admirable, for with the becke of the hand and ſigne of the countenance they vnderſtand without wordes what they are to do: rather then they will make any noiſe in the night, they will ſuffer their ſlaues and priſoners to eſcape. They puniſh theft and quarrelling extremely. They dare not for their liues ſtep out of their ranks to ſpoile vineyard or orchard. They feare not death; beleeuing their deſtinies to be written in their foreheads ineuitable. The valiant are aſſured of preferment; the cowards of puniſhment. They are neuer billetted in townes, nor ſuffred to lodge one night within them. To keepe them in breath and exerciſe, their princes are alwaies in action with ſome neighbour or other, being verie iealous of the corruption of their diſcipline. Toward the eaſt from *Tauris* to *Balſara* lie the *Perſians*; toward the ſouth and the *Perſian gulfe* the *Portugals*; toward the red ſea *Preſter Iohn*; vpon the weſt the *Xeriffe* and the kingdome of *Naples*; on the north, border the *Polonians* and the *Germans*. Without all queſtion the Turke farre excelleth the Perſian in militarie diſcipline: for *Mahumet* the ſecond tooke *Vſſuncaſſan*. *Selim* the firſt (and after him his ſonne *Soliman*) defeated *Iſmael* and *Tamas*. *Amurath* the third by his Lieutenants tooke from them all *Media*, the greater *Armenia*, and their chiefe citie *Tauris*. Their batallions of footemen, and the vſe of great Ordinance, which the Perſians want and know not how to manage, haue beene the chiefeſt occaſions of theſe good fortunes. And although the Perſians haue ſometime preuailed in horſe-fights, yet hath it beene alwaies with the loſſe of ground, not to themſelues onely, but to their confederates alſo. For *Selim* the firſt, tooke from the *Mamelucks*, Siria and Ægypt, and *Amurath* the thirde almoſt wholy extinguiſhed the nation of the *Georgians* their ſureſt allies.

Borderers The Perſian.

The Portugals. To the Portugals he is farre inferiour; for in ſea-fights and ſea forces there is as great inequalitie betweene them, as betweene

tweene the Ocean and the Perſian gulfe. The Portugals haue in India hauens and caſtels, territories and dominions plentifull in timber, prouiſion, and all ſorts of warlike furniture for the ſea, not without many great princes their allies and confederates; whereas the Turke hath no one place of ſtrength in the Perſian gulfe, but Balſara. The tract of the ſea coaſt of Arabia, which may ſeeme to ſtande him inſteede, hath but fower townes, & thoſe weake and of ſmall eſteeme: which are reaſons ſufficient to induce, that in this gulfe, as likewiſe in the red ſea, he hath ſmall meanes to rig out any gallant Armada. Beſides, the ſoile is vtterly barren of timber fit for the building of galleies: for which ſcarcitie whenſoeuer he had occaſion to ſet foorth a nauie in thoſe ſeas, he was conſtrained to ſende downe his ſtuffe from the hauens of Bithinia and Cilicia by Nilus to Cair and from thence to conuey it ouerland vpon camels backes to his Arſenall at Suez. What ſucceſſe his fleetes haue had in thoſe parts you may read in the diſcourſe of Portugall: for the Portugals take great care to preuent him of ſetting foote in thoſe ſeas, yea as ſoone as they do but heare that he is preparing any ſea forces, they preſently looke out and ſpoile whatſoeuer they light vpon.

For captaines, ſoldiers, armes and munition he is better prouided then *Preſter Iohn*: for this prince hath a large territorie without munition, and infinite ſoldiers without weapons, *Barnangaſſo* his lieutenant loſt all the ſea coaſt of the red ſea, and brought the Abiſſine into ſuch extremities, that to obtaine peace, he promiſed the payment of a yeerely tribute. *Preſter Iohn.*

In Africke he hath a greater iuriſdiction then the Xeriffe: for he is Lord of all thoſe prouinces which lie betweene the red ſea and Velez de Gomera, but the Xeriffe hath the richer, the ſtronger and better vnited. Neither of them for the neighbourhood of the king of Spaine dare moleſt one another. *The Xeriffe.*

The reſidue of his neighbours are the Chriſtians, and firſt the king of Poland: what either of theſe princes can effect the one againſt the other, hath bene manifeſted by their forepaſſed actions. In ſome ſort it ſeemeth that the Turke feareth *The Pa-laick.*

the

the Polaques: for vpon ſundrie occaſions being prouoked (as in the raigne of *Henrie* the third, in the warre which *Iuonia Voyvod* of Walachia made with the Turkes, wherein great numbers of Polaques ſerued) and (in the raigne of *Sigiſmund* the third) notwithſtanding the incurſions of the Koſacks, and the inrodes of *Iohn Zamoſchus* Generall of Polonia, he ſtirred not, neither with woontlike diſdaine once offered to reuenge ſo great an indignitie. Againe ſince the infortunate iourney of *Ladiſlaus*, they neuer enterpriſed iourney againſt the Turkes, no nor at any time aided the Walachians their neighbours, their friends and confederates, but ſuffered whatſoeuer they held vpon the Euxin ſea to be taken from them. But the ſmothering of this wrong I rather attribute to the baſe minde of the king, then to any want of good will or courage either in the gentlemen or nobilitie. *Sigiſmund* the firſt being by *Leo* the tenth mooued to warr vpon the Turke, anſwered, *Few words ſhall ſerue; make firſt firme peace betweene the Chriſtian princes, then will I be nothing behinde the moſt* forward. *Sigiſmund* the ſecond bore a minde ſo far abhorring from warre, that he not onely neuer made attempt againſt this enemie, but being iniuried by the Moſcouite, let him likewiſe doe what he would vnreuenged. King *Stephen* a great politician, thought the warr of Turkie full of danger, notwithſtanding diſcourſing with his familiars, he would often ſay, that if he had but thirtie thouſand good footemen ioyned with his Polonian horſemen, he could willingly haue found in his hart to trie his fortune with this enemie.

The Germans. The princes of Auſtrich are borderers by a far larger circuit of land then any other potentate, and being conſtrained to ſpend the greateſt part of their reuenues in the continuall maintenance of twentie thouſand footemen and horſemen in garriſons: they ſeeme rather to ſtand content to defend their owne, then any way minded to recouer their loſſes or inlarge their bounds. *Ferdinands* iourney to Buda and Poſſouia was rather couragious then proſperous: the reaſon was, not becauſe his ſoldiers wanted ſtrength and courage, but skill and diſcipline. For numbers he was equall to the enimie, and reaſonably well furniſhed with neceſſaries, but his troupes conſiſted

ſiſted of Germans and Bohemians, nations by influence heauie, ſlow, and nothing fit to cope with the Turkes skilfull and readie in all warlike exerciſes.

The Venetians likewiſe are borderers for many hundred miles ſpace by ſea and land: but they maintaine their eſtate by treaties of peace, by traffike and preſents rather then by open hoſtilitie, prouiding very ſtrongly for their places expoſed to danger, and auoiding all charges and hazard of war, yea refuſing no conditions, if not diſhonorable, rather then willing to trie their fortune in battell. The reaſon is not, becauſe they want money and ſufficiencie of warlike furniture, but ſoldiers and prouiſion incident to ſo great a warfare. *The Venetians.*

His laſt neighbour is the king of Spaine, betweene whom there is no great difference: the kings reuenues (I meane thoſe of Europe onely) exceed the Turkiſh: for he receiueth more then fower millions out of his prouinces of Italie and Sicil: two and vpward out of Portugall, and three from the Indies one yeere with another. In theſe onely he æqualizeth the Turke, and in the ordinarie reuenues of Caſtile, Arragon and Belgia, he farre exceeds him. But what can you finde (ſay ſome men) to compare to his Timars? Firſt I anſwere, that the kings reuenues are farre greater then the Turks, next his ſubſidies which he leuieth extraordinarily (of late times for the moſt part ordinarily) as his Croiſados, do amount to as much as the intire profits of ſome whole kingdome. His tenths of the ſpiritual liuings are able to maintaine one hundred ſtrong gallies: his eſcheats in Spaine and Naples bring more into his cofers then a man woulde thinke. His beneuolences and preſents ſent him from Naples, Sicil, Sardinia, Millan, and the New-world are infinite and magnificent. Not long ſince Caſtile granted a contribution of eight millions of gold to be paid in fower yeeres, which ſumme amounteth to the Turkes whole reuenue of one yeere. What ſhould I ſpeake of his Commendams of the orders of Montegia, Calatrauia, Alcantara, and S. Iames, which were inough if he had naught elſe to ſuffice him: he is great maſter of the ſaid orders, and thereby hath meanes to aduance and inrich his ſeruants, whomſoeuer he pleaſeth, as freely as if he were king of France or Poland. In *The Spaniſh.*

Spaine he keepeth three thousand horsemen, as many in Flanders, in Millan fower hundred men at armes, and 1000. light horse: in Naples 1500. men at armes, and a great companie of light armed Italians. The number of his soldierie in Sicill is one thousand fiue hundred. Neither are his feodaries lightly to be esteemed, who vpon necessitie are bound by their tenures at their owne charges to serue personally in the field, especially if you consider their numbers, wherein are reckoned 23. Dukes, 32. Marquises, 49. Vicounts, 7. Archbishops (for they likewise in this case are bound to contribute as the great lay Lords) 33. Bishops. And in Naples 14. Princes, 25. Dukes, 37. Marquises, 54. Earles, 448. Barons, to speake nothing of Portugall, Sicill, Sardinia, Millan. Lastly you must note, that these troupes to whom the Turke granteth these Timars, are not so renowmed for their valour as for their numbers: for the Timars and profits of the villages and possessions, togither with the greedie desire of inriching themselues with the demains of their farmes, hath bred such loue of ease and peace in their minds, that they are growen cowards and base minded; by their good wils hating the trauails of warre and innouations. They are drawen from their houses with an ill will, and they march with a greater desire of returning home, and inioying the pleasures of their gardens, and the plentie of their granges, then stomacks to cope with their aduersaries, or to inrich themselues with the spoiles of their enemies. For if by a little pillage fierce and valiant soldiers haue become cowards and men of small seruice, what will faire possessions, a pleasant seat, a rich dairy, and wife and children left behinde, bring to passe? I may well say, and say truly, that these Timarots are fitter to bridle and keepe vnder the subdued prouinces, then to fight in field against armed nations: and to this vse it is good policie to maintaine them. For who knoweth not that the Turkish subiects do hate his gouernment, his religion and tyrannie? For religion onely, the Moores and Arabians, who differ in opinion; and for religion and tyranny, the Christians, who make more then two third parts of his subiects. For iealousie heereof he is inforced to keepe the greater part of those troupes at home, vnlesse he should lay naked his estates to infinite

finite casualties. To speake in a word, his caualrie is so farre and wide disperſed throughout the prouinces, that they can not easily be drawen vnto any famous iourney in great numbers, without losse of long time, neither are they able to staie long from their houses, but they will fall into diseases and extremities; so that if the grand Seignior had no other aides but these Timarots, he might happen to make many vnfortunate iourneies.

The experience of forepassed exploits, doth well shewe the difference of their seuerall forces. The losse of the Spanish fleete at Zerby, may be put in the ballance against the Turkish flight from Malta. The losse of Goletta against the taking of the rocke of Veliz. Tunis is alwaies to be taken at his pleasure that hath a liking thereto. The Spanish king neuer enterprised anie sole iourney against the Turke, but he hath valiantly defended his owne at Malta and Oran. I will speake nothing of the defeature at Lepanto, for other princes had their shares therein. There was a treatie of truce motioned betweene both princes, not manie yeeres since, and equally accepted of both parties. For the one was inuested in the warre of Persia, the other in the commotions of the Low countries. These warres by reason of their remote distances were extreme chargeable to both princes, but woorser to the king then the Turke: for though Persia be farre from Constantinople (from whence the principall sinewes of the warre were to be drawne) yet it bordereth vpon Mesopotamia, and other subdued prouinces, from whence his armies are supplied with prouisions and treasure: but Belgia is farre distant from any part of the Spanish dominions. The Turke had to doe but with the Persian (a state without any mightie confederate woorth speaking of) but the king was ingaged in a warre of greater difficultie, fauoured by the English, the French and the Germans: nations seuerally equal in al points to the Persian.

The Romane Empire.

THe Romane Empire in his greateſt glorie, euen in the time of *Traian*, ſtretched from the Iriſh Ocean, beyond Tigris: from the Atlantike Ocean, to the Perſian gulfe, and from Catnes at the Calidonian wood to the riuer Albis and beyond the Danubie. It began firſt to decline by the ciuill warres of *Galba*, *Otho* and *Vitellius*. For in thoſe times the legions of Britanie were tranſported into the continent: Holland and the bordering countries reuolted, and immediately after the Sarracens finding the frontires of the Empire without garriſons, paſſed ouer Danubius. The Alani woone the ſtreights of the Caſpian hils; the Perſians indeuoured to get them a name and reputation; the Gothes wandered throughout Mœſia and Macedonia; the French men entred Gallia. But *Conſtantine* the Emperor reſtored it to the former glorie, made an end of ciuill warre, and tamed the barbarous and cruell nations: and had he not committed two great faults, the Romane Empire might long haue flouriſhed. The firſt was, the tranſlating of the Imperiall ſeate, from Rome to Conſtantinople, which action weakened the Weſt, and ouerthrew the Empire. For it is more cleere then day, that as plants remooued out of their naturall ſoile and tranſported into regions contrarie in temperature and aire, retaine ſmall vigour of their naturall vertue: So humane actions, but eſpecially cities and kingdomes, looſe their glorie and ſplendour by theſe great alterations. And for this cauſe the Romane Senate woulde neuer conſent, that the people ſhould leaue Rome and dwell at Veij, a citie farre more pleaſant and commodious then Rome, eſpecially after the ſacking thereof by the Frenchmen.

Conſtantinople. The ſeate of Conſtantinople is ſo pleaſant, ſo commodious, and ſo fertile, that it is hard to iudge whether humane wiſedome or nature hath ſhewed moſt induſtrie in the ſcituation thereof. There is no citie vpon the face of the earth better

ſerued

ſerued by land and ſea: on one ſide lie the moſt beautifull meadowes; on the other ſide the pleaſant vallies: here riſe the fruitfull hillocks; there floweth and refloweth the plentifull ſea, yeelding all ſorts of needfull and delicate prouiſion to the inhabitants thereof. He that did ſee it would ſay, that here ſtroue *Bacchus* with *Ceres*, *Pomana* with *Flora*, magnificence with plentie, who ſhould be moſt bountifull to this citie. After the ſea hath made many gallant bayes and ſafe roades (whereof Boſperus onely in the ſpace of fiue and twentie miles yeeldeth thirtie) it runneth by the citie and countire, with ſo quiet and gentle a ſtreame, that the great ſhips bringing corne from Siria and Egypt, and the riches of Trapezond from Capha do ſeldome miſcarrie. Here is euermore harueſt, which now and then faileth in Thrace and Aſia. Here ſholes of fiſh friſking and playing hard vnder the wals of the citie, ſwim in ſuch woonderfull abundance, that he which hath not ſeene it, will hardly beleeue it: but he may eaſily be perſwaded hereof, that conſidereth how in the winter time the fiſh flying the cold places, deſcend by Pontus Euxinus, euen in the view of Conſtantinople, towards Propontus: then ſhunning the heate of ſummer, returne againe by the ſame way, from whence they departed in the beginning of the ſpring. At theſe two ſeaſons of the yeere, the inhabitants as well for their profit as delight, ſtore themſelues with great quantities thereof. At this day on the Northeaſt part of the citie on the other ſide of the water is the towne of Pera; on the North part is the Arſenall, where the gallies are built and do remaine; and on the South ſide are the houſes wherein the ordinance, artillerie and munition are ſtowed. To ſpeake in a worde, there is no place fitter ſeated for plentie of all things for weakening mens valors, for corrupting vertue with vice, then this great and moſt ſtately citie of Conſtantinople: prooued by the ſloth and delicacie of the greateſt number of the Greeke Emperors and their armies. For if the pleaſures of Tarent, and the ſoile of the Siberites were inchantments ſufficient to make men effeminate, and quite alter the nature of the inhabitants: if the delights of Capua could ſoften & quench the fierce courages of *Hannibal* and his ſoldiers: if *Plato* deemed the Cyrenians incapable

capable of diſcipline, by reaſon of their long proſperitie, what may wee thinke of Conſtantinople, for ſcituation proud, for buildings ſumptuous, eſpecially of their temples, and for beautifull and commodious hauens pleaſant and delightſome aboue any other citie through the whole world? To conclude, when nothing can be more dangerous to a ſtate then innouations, what could be more hurtfull (I may ſay deſperate) to the Romane Empire then that great, ſodaine, and vnlooked for mutation? That good wel meaning Emperor, in this did neither more nor leſſe, then as a man endeuouring to adde a greater grace to his bodie, ſhould place his face on his knees, and his hart on his heeles.

The ſecond fault of *Conſtantine* was the diuiſion of the Empire to his children, ann. Dom. 341. By this diuiſion of one Empire he made three, and withall a memorable diminution of his authoritie and forces. For when his ſonnes fell to ciuill diſſention, they conſumed one another ſo cruelly, that the Empire reſembled a bloodleſſe yea liueleſſe bodie. And though ſometime vnder ſome one prince it ſtood on foote againe, yet it remained alwaies ſubiect to diuiſion, and departed into two Empires, the eaſt and the weſt, till the comming of *Odoacer* king of the Herules and Turingi, into Italy with a mightie hoſt: by which inuaſion *Auguſtulus* ſuffered ſuch irrecouerable loſſes, that in extreme deſpaire he was forced to caſt himſelfe into the protection of the eaſt Empire. This happened in the yeere of our Lord, 476. And about this time the *Huns* paſſed *Danubius*: *Alaricus* king of the Gothes tooke *Rome*: the *Vandals* firſt ſpoiled *Andoluzia*, afterwards *Africke*: the *Alans* woon *Portugall*: the *Gothes* conquered the greater part of *Spaine*, the *Saxons*, *Britaine*, the *Burgundians*, *Prouince*. Anno 556. *Iuſtinian* reſtored it ſomewhat to a better ſtate, driuing the *Vandals* out of *Africke*, and the *Gothes* out of *Italy* by his captaines, but this faire weather laſted not long. For in the yeere 713. the armes and hereſies of the *Mahumetans* began to vexe the *eaſt Empire*, and ſhortly after the *Sarracens* waſted *Syria*, *Ægypt*, the *Archipelago*, *Africke*, *Sicill*, and Spaine. In the yeere 735. they vanquiſhed *Narbon*, *Auignion*, *Tolouſe*, *Burdeux*, and the bordering regions. Thus by little and little

went

went the weſterne Empire to ruine. As for the eaſterne, it ſtoode ſo weake and tottering, that with all the force it had, it was ſcarce able to defend Conſtantinople againſt the armes of the *Sarracens*, much leſſe to miniſter aide to the weſterne prouinces. But in the yeere of our Lord 800. *Charles* the great, king of France, obtained the title of the weſterne Empire, which *Ado* biſhop of Vienna remembreth in theſe wordes; Vpon the holie feaſt daie of the Natiuitie of our Lord, aſſoone as the mightie king *Charles* had made an end of his praiers, *Leo* the Pope ſet the Imperiall crowne vpon his head, whereat all the people with one voice cried: *Carolo Auguſto, à Deo coronato, magno, pacifico, Imperatori Romanorum, vita & victoria.*

The weſterne Empire was diuided from the eaſterne in this manner: that Naples and Sipont eaſtward with Sicill ſhould belong to the Greeke Empire: Bononia ſhoulde remaine to the Lombards; the Venetians were neuters; the popedome free: the reſt *Charles* ſhould poſſeſſe. *Blondus* ſaith, that the Empreſſe *Irene* gaue the firſt counſell to this diuiſion which afterwards was cõfirmed by *Nicephorus*. Thus the beginning of the imperiall diuiſion began at the tranſlation of the ſeate from Rome to Conſtatinople, increaſed by renting it into many principalities, and tooke perfection at the coronation of *Charles*. For before him there was one forme of gouernment, and the lawes, magiſtracies and ordinances which were enacted for the welfare of one Empire, tended to the good and honour of both Empires, as to members of one bodie; and if one Emperor died without iſſue, the whole Empire remained to the ſuruiuor. But when *Charles* the great was choſen Emperor of the weſt, there was no more regard taken of the eaſt Empire, neither the Emperor of the eaſt had to do with the weſt, nor the weſt with the eaſt. The Empire of the weſt continued in this line aboue 100 yeeres, and failed in *Arnolph* the laſt of that houſe. In the yeere 1453. *Mahumet* prince of the Turkes tooke Conſtantinople, and vtterly extinguiſhed the ſucceſſion of the eaſterne Empire.

In the yeere of Chriſt 1002. all claime of inheritance reiected,

iected, the creation of the Emperor was granted to the free election of seuen princes, termed Electors. The reason why the Empire became elective, which had so long continued hereditarie in the house of *Charles*, was, because *Otho* the third left no issue male. After whom the westerne Empire was marueilously curtald and diminished: for nothing was left but Germany and a part of Italy. The *Pope* held *Romagna*; the *Venetians* liued free, possessing great dominions ioyned to their state: the *Normans* taking *Naples* and *Sicill* from the *Greekes*, held them in fee of the Church, first vnder *Clement* the Antipope, then vnder *Nicholas* the second and his successors, who for their priuate gaine ratified the former grant of *Clement* Antipope.

In Tuscane and Lombardie, partly by the quarrels betweene *Henry* the fourth, *Henry* the fift, *Frederike* the first, and *Frederike* the second, with the Romane bishops: partly by reason of the valour of the inhabitants, the Emperor reaped more labour then honor, more losse then profite. And therefore *Rodulphus* terrified with the misfortunes and crosses of his predecessors, had no great minde to trauell into Italy, but solde them their libertie for a small matter. They of Luques paid ten thousand crownes, the Florentines but sixe thousand. And so euery state by little and little forsaking the Emperor, no part of Italy remained, but the bare title. The *Dukes* of *Millan* (and so euery other state) vsurped what they could catch, without leaue asking, onely they desired their inuestiture of the Empire. But *Frances*, after the conquest of Millan, did little regard this inuestiture, saying, that he was able to keepe it, by the same meanes, that he had got it. The princes beyond the Mounts also withdrew their obedience; so that at this day the Empire is inclosed in Germanie: and why the Prouinces of Germanie are not all vnder one gouernment, I will now describe.

Some prouinces are as it were members of the Empire, yet seperated; for they neither doe, nor will acknowledge that they belong to the Empire; as the kings of *Denmarke* and *Sweathland*, the *Duke of Prussia*, the *Swissers*, the *Neatherlands*. Others confesse the Emperor for their soueraigne Prince;

Prince; but they come not to the diets of the Empire, nor will beare the taxe and tallages of the Empire; as the *Dukes of Sauoy, Loraine, and the Princes of Italie.* Other come to the diets, and pay all impositions; those are the *Princes and cities of Germanie.* But the king of *Bohemia* by the grant of *Charles* the fourth is exempted from all contributions. Other places doe not onely pay contribution, but likewise a peculiar tribute to the Emperor: those are the cities, termed *Imperiall.* Some of the Princes of Germanie haue to doe both in the diets, and at the election of a new Emperour: those are the sixe Electors; three churchmen, and three laymen, to whom vpon equalitie of voices the king of Bohemia is ioyned: and though he come not to the diets, yet hath his voice in the elections. To speake in a word, those are properly termed the cities and princes of the Empire, who haue to doe in the diets, and as members of one body, participate of good and euill, aduantage and disaduantage throughout the empire. These liuing after the manner of a common wealth wel vnited, haue the Emperor for their head for their common safetie, who ruleth not absolutely, but by the diets, and cannot call them, without the consent of the greatest number of the Electors. The Ordinances of these diets cannot be frustrated, but by another diet: but of putting the decrees in execution, the Emperor hath full and sole authoritie. And therefore as touching preheminence and dignity, he is chiefe of the Christian Princes, as he vpon whom the maiestie of the Romane Empire resteth, and ought to defend the Church of God, the catholike faith, and procure the peace and welfare of the whole Christian common wealth.

Now seeing it is manifest that the glorie of the westerne Empire consisteth in Germanie, it is good reason to say somewhat of this most ample and flourishing prouince. It lieth betweene Odera and Mosa; betweene Vistula and Aa; and betweene the Germaine and Balticke Ocean and the Alpes. The forme therof is fower square, equall in length and bredth, stretching 650. miles euery way. It aboundeth with corne, cattell and fish, which experience sheweth. For *Charles* the fifth had vnder his ensignes at Vienna 90. thousand footemen, and 35. thou-

Germany.

Situation.

Fertilitie.

35. thousand horse; *Maximilian* the second at Iauerin almost 100. thousand footemen, and 35. thousand horse, and yet no man complained of deerenes or scarsite. In the warre betweene *Charles* the fifth and the Protestants, for certaine moneths 150. thousand men sustained themselues abundantly in the field. It is rich in mines of gold, siluer, and all sorts of mettal, and therein surpasseth the residue of the prouinces of Europe. Nature hath also bestowed vpon the vpland countries many springs and pits of salt water, of which hard salt is boiled. Neither is it lesse stored with merchandise; for the inhabitants more then any other nation do excell in curious workmanship and mechanicall inuentions: and it is so watred with nauigable riuers, that all sortes of merchandise and wares are with ease conuaied from one place to another. The greatest of them is Danow, next the Rhene, which runneth cleane thorough the countrie from the South to the North, as the Danow from West to East. Albis riseth in Bohemia, passeth by Misnia, Saxonie, Marchia, and the ancient Marquisat. Odera springeth in Morauia, watereth Silesia, the two Marquisates, and Pomeran. Then follow Wesara, Neccarus, Mosa, Mosella, Isara, Oenus, Varta, Moenus. This diuideth Germanie into two parts, the high and the lowe. The high stretcheth from the Mase to the Alpes: the lowe from the Mase to the Ocean. It is diuided into many prouinces, the chiefest whereof (I meane the true members of the Empire) are Alsatia, Sweuia, Bauaria, Austria, Bohemia, Morauia, Silesia, Lusatia, the two Marquisates, Saxonie, Misnia, Thuringia, Franconia, Hassia, Westphalia, Cleueland, Maguncе, Pomeran. In these Prouinces besides Belgia and Heluetia are esteemed to be ten millions of men. In them are conteined aboue 80. great cities, villages innumerable, & those plentifully stored with all sorts of mechanicall occupations. Those which are seated neere riuers for the most part are builded of stone, the vpland, part of stone, and part of timber. The houses thereof are verie faire, the streetes strait, large, and paued with stone, yea more neat and handsome then those of Italy. *Strabo* writeth that the Romans excelled the Græcians in cleanlines of their cities by reason of their chanels to conuey away the soile, but at this day the

Mineralls.

Salt.

Marchandise.

the Dutchmen doe farre exceed the Romans heerein. The greateſt number of them are free, and haue had their liberty, ſome for ſeruice done to the empire, ſome for money, ſome by force, as Brunſwike, which hath withdrawne herſelfe from the command of theſe Dukes: Saxonie and Denmarke vſe their owne lawes. In criminall cauſes they inflict moſt ſharpe torments, and vnuſuall kinds of death, which is a ſigne of the crueltie of their natures. They were the inuentors of Printing: of guns and clocks, things of notable vſe for mankind.

The people is diuided into fower ſorts; husbandmen (they beare no office) citizens, noblemen, and prelates. The laſt three ſorts make the aſſemblies and ſtates of the Empire. Of Prelats, the Archbiſhops Electors haue the chiefeſt place. The Archbiſhop of Ments is Chancelor of the Empire; the Biſhop of Coloin is Chancelor of Italy, and the Biſhop of Treuers is Chancelor of France. The Archbiſhop of Saltzburg is of greateſt iuriſdiction and reuenue. The Biſhop of Maidburg writeth himſelfe primate of Germanie. Breme and Hamburg had great iuriſdictions: next follow aboue 40, other Biſhops, the great *Maſter* of the *Dutch order*, and the Prior of the knights of Ieruſalem: then ſeuen Abbots, and they likewiſe are ſtates of the Empire. Of ſecular Princes the king of Bohemia is principall, who is chiefe taſter: the Duke of Saxonie, Marſhall: the Marques of Brandeburg, high Chamberlain: the Earle Palatine, Sewer. Beſides theſe princes there are thirtie other Dukes, amongſt whom the Archduke of Auſtria holdeth the higheſt place, and of theſe Dukes the king of Denmarke by reaſon of his dukedome of Holſatia, is reckoned to be one. Then the Marquiſes, Lantgraues, Earles and Barons innumerable.

The free cities (which in times paſt haue beene 96. and are now but 60. gouerning themſelues by their peculiar lawes) are bound no further then to pay two fiue parts of whatſoeuer contribution is granted in the aſſemblies. The cities Imperiall, becauſe (as we ſaid before) they pay tribute to the Emperour, 15. thouſande Florens. The cities haue ſufficient reuenue of their own, for the moſt part amounting aboue the value of impoſed contributions. It is thought that the Em-

pire receiueth euery way aboue ſeuen millions, which is a great matter: yet beſides this ordinarie, the people not ouerpreſſed as in Italy, doe pay other great ſubſidies to their princes in times of danger. The Empire is bound (at leaſtwiſe accuſtomed) to furniſh the Emperor, when he goeth to Rome to be crowned, with twentie thouſand footemen, and fower thouſand horſe, and to maintaine them for eight moneths, and therefore it is called *Romanum ſubſidium*. The reuenues of the cities and lay princes haue beene greatly augmented ſince the ſuppreſſing of poperie, and bringing in of new impoſitions, which taking their beginning from Italy, (for euill examples ſpread farre) quickly paſſed ouer to France and Germanie. In times of neceſſitie great taxes are laide vpon the whole Empire, and leuied extraordinarily, and that they may be gathered with the greater eaſe, Germanie is parted into ten diuiſions, which haue their particular aſſemblies for the execution of the edicts made in the generall diets of the Empire.

Forces at land. As concerning the multitude of people, it is thought that the Empire is able to affoord two hundred thouſand horſe and foote, which the warres before ſpoken of may prooue to be true, as likewiſe the warres of *France* and *Belgia*: for ſince the yeere of our Lord 1566. the warre hath beene continued in thoſe two prouinces for the moſt part with Germane ſoldiers; and yet to this day, great and continuall inrolements are taken as well of horſemen and footemen, through the whole Empire. At one time *Wolfang* Duke of Bipont led into France an armie of twelue thouſand footemen and eight thouſand horſemen in the behalfe of the Proteſtants, and at the ſame time the Count *Mansfield* was leader of fiue thouſand horſemen of the ſame nation, in behalfe of the Catholikes. *William* of Naſſow had in his armie eight thouſand Germane horſemen, and ten thouſand footemen: the Duke of Alua had at the ſame inſtant, 30000. What ſhoulde I ſpeake of the numbers that entred Flanders with Duke *Caſimere*? Or thoſe that entred France vnder the ſame leader in the yeere of our Lord, 1578? Or to what end ſhould I make mention of that armie, whereof part ſerued *Henrie* the fourth, part the league, but to prooue

proone that this nation muſt be verie populous, ſeeing that warres are continually open in ſome one or other part of Chriſtendome, and no action vndertaken therein, wherein great numbers of Germans are not waged and entertained. To ſpeake nothing of the Netherlands, who in times paſt haue reſiſted the whole power of France with an armie of fower ſcore thouſand men, or of the Swiſſers who in their owne defence are thought able to raiſe an armie of 100. and twentie thouſand ſoldiers. I will onely put you in mind of that expedition which they made out of their owne territories into Lumbardy, in defence of that ſtate againſt *Francis* the French king, with an armie of fiftie thouſand footemen.

Footemen. *Horſemen.*

The beſt footemen of Germanie are thoſe of Tiroll, Sweuia, and Weſtphalia: the beſt horſemen thoſe of Brunſwick, Cleueland, and Franconia. Of weapons they handle the ſword and the pike, better then the harquebuze. In the field they are very ſtrong, as well to charge as to beare the ſhots; for order is of great effect, which is as it were naturall to them, with a ſtately pace and firme ſtanding. They are not accounted of for the defence of fortreſſes, and for their corpulent bodies I hold them not fit for the aſſault of a breache. And therefore they are to be accounted rather reſolute and conſtant, then fierce or couragious; for they will neuer come to the ſeruice, wherein courage and magnanimitie is to be ſhewed. After the victorie, they kill all whom they meete, without difference of age, ſexe or calling: if the war be drawne out at length, or if they bee beſieged, they faint with cowardize. In campe they can endure no delaies, neither know they how to ouercome by temporizing. If their firſt attempts fall not out to their mindes, they are at their wits ende and looſe courage; if they once beginne to runne, they will neuer turne againe. He that retaines them muſt be at extraordinarie charges and great trouble, by reaſon of their wiues who conſume ſo much prouiſion, that it is a hard thing to prouide it, almoſt vnpoſſible to preſerue; and without this prouiſion they ſtand in no ſteede. Their horſes are rather ſtrong then couragious: and becauſe of ten which goe to the warre, eight are preſt from the plough, they are of ſmall ſeruice, and when

when they ſee their bloud their hart quaileth: But the Spaniſh
At ſea. genits in this caſe waxe more fierce. In ſea forces they are not much inferiour to their land forces, although they vſe no ſea fights; yet the cities of Hamburg, Lubecke, Roſtoch and ſome others are able to make a hundred ſhips; ſome ſay one hundred and fiftie, equall to the forces of the king of Denmarke and Sweathland. When theſe ſtrong and inuincible forces are vnited togither, they feare no enimie; and in imminent perill they are ſure of the aide of the Princes of Italy, Sauoy, and Lorraine: for theſe Princes neuer forſooke the Empire in neceſſitie. To the Zigethan-warre *Emanuel* Duke of Sauoy ſent ſixe hundred Argoliteers. *Coſmo* Duke of Florence three thouſand footemen paide by the State. *Alphonſus* the ſecond, Duke of Ferrara, was there in perſon with 1500. horſemen: better horſemen were not in the whole campe. *William* Duke of Mantua was there alſo with a gallant troupe of footemen: and *Henrie* of Lorraine Duke of Guiſe had there three hundred gentlemen. The common-wealths of Genes and Iucca aſſiſted him with money. So did certaine Engliſh gentlemen deſirous of honour, and to winne renowne, preſent themſelues vnto his maieſtie in this ſeruice, amongſt whom were maſter *Smith, R. Greenuill, H. Champernon, P. Budſhall, T. Cotton*, and *W. Georg* a captaine of ſingular valour & reputation. With the aide of theſe princes, and thoſe whom *Pius* the fift ſent to his ſuccors, *Maximilian* the ſecond, had in the fielde one hundred thouſand footemen, and fiue and thirtie thouſand horſe. Anno 1566. the ſtates of the empire granted him forty thouſand footemen, and eight thouſand horſemen for eight moneths: and twentie thouſand footemen and fower thouſand horſemen for three yeeres next following.

Italie.

Italie.

ITalie (according to *Plinie*) the moſt beautifull and goodlieſt region vnder the ſunne, the darling of Nature, the mother of hardie men, braue captaines, and valiant ſoldiors: floriſhing in all arts, and abounding with noble wits and men of ſingular ſpirits, ſcituate vnder a climate moſt holſome and temperate, commodious for traſique, and moſt fertill for corne and herbage; conteineth in length from *Auguſta Pretoria* vnto *Otranto* 1020. miles, and in bredth from the riuer *Varo* in *Prouince*, to the riuer *Arſia* in *Friuli* (which is the broadeſt place) 410. miles: and in the narrow places, as from the mouth of *Peſcara* to the mouth of *Tiber* 126. miles. So that to compaſſe it by ſea from *Varo* to *Arſia* are 3038. miles, which with the 410. by land, maketh the whole circuit to be 3448. miles. Thus it appereth to be almoſt an Iland, bounded on the Eaſt ſide with the Adriatique ſea, on the South and Weſt with the Torrhene, and on the north with the Alpes: the which becauſe it is diligently deſcribed by others, we will but as it were point at it, and ſo much the rather, becauſe there is no countrey in the world better knowen and more haunted by ſtrangers. Inheritances there deſcend to the children, as lands holden by Gauelkind with vs in ſome parts of England, ſo that one brother hath as good a ſhare as another, and if the elder be borne to the title of a *Conte*, ſo is the yoonger, and ſo called, yea if there be twentie brethren, except it be in the eſtates of princes, as of Mantua, Ferrara, Vrbin, and ſuch like, which euermore deſcend to the eldeſt entirely. By this meanes it commeth to paſſe, that oftentimes you ſhall ſee Earles and Marquiſſes without landes or goods, yet moſt ſtrictly ſtanding vpon the reputation of their diſcents and the glory of their names for themſelues and their iſſues for euer. But the gentlemen which haue whereof to liue in any good ſort, are reported to ſurpaſſe the gentrie of any other nation in good carriage and behauiour, and for *Maners of the people.*

the

the moſt part profeſſe armes and follow ſeruice. For firſt, to be diſcerned from the vulgar, they all ingenerall ſpeake the courtiſan, which is an excellent commendation, conſidering the dialects amongſt them. For notwithſtanding the difference betweene the Florentine and the Venetian, the Milanois and the Romane, the Neapolitane and the Genois, which may well be likened to the difference betweene a Londoner and a Northern man, yet by the toong you ſhall not lightlie diſcerne of what part of the countrey any gentleman is of. No more different are they in manners and behauior: honorable, courteous, prudent, and ſo graue withall, that it ſhould ſeeme each one of them to haue had a princelike education; to their ſuperiors obedient, to equals reſpectiue, to inferiors curteous, to ſtrangers affable, & deſirous by kinde offices to win their loues and good eſteemes. Of expence & lone of his money very warie, and will be aſſured to bee at no more coſt then he is ſure either to ſaue by, or to haue thanke for it. In apparell modeſt, in furniture of houſhold ſumptuous, and at their tables neat, ſober of ſpeech, enimies of ill report, and ſo iealous of their reputations, that whoſoeuer ſpeaketh euill of one of them, if the partie ſlandered may know it, and finde opportunitie to performe it, the partie offending ſhall ſurelie die for it.

Merchants. The Merchants likewiſe for the moſt part are gentlemen. For when of one houſe there be three or fower brethren, likely one or two of them giue themſelues to trafique and merchandiſe. And ſometimes, if they chance not to diuide their fathers ſubſtance and patrimonie (as many times they do not) then do they which profeſſe themſelues merchants trauell for the wealth and welfare of their brethren, ioyntly participating of loſſe and profit. But in outward ſhew theſe carrie not like reputation to the gentlemen before ſpoken of: for they profeſſe not armes, but deſire to liue in peace, and ſtudie to find vent for their wares, and new trafique into ſtrange countries: yet haue they neuertheleſſe reputation of nobilitie for their trade of merchandize, but by reaſon they ſtay at home, and occupie the richeſt farmes, and follow husbandry by their bailies and factors, they become the beſt and wealthieſt merchants

merchants in all Chriſtendome.

The Artificers are thought to be the beſt workmen of the worlde, and are ſo well paied for their worke, that many of them liue by their labour as well as others doe by their reuenues; yea and ſometimes grow very rich, but not lightly in two or three diſcents ariſe vnto any reputation of gentrie. *Artificers.*

The poorer ſort are the husbandmen: for they are oppreſſed on all hands, and in the countrey liueth no man of wealth. The gentrie and wealthier ſort dwell in townes and walled cities, leauing the villages, fields and paſtures to their tenants, not at a rent certaine as we do in England, but to halfes, or to the thirds of all graine, fruit and profits, ariſing of the ground, according as it ſhall be, either barren or fertill. And this the poore tennant muſt till and manure at his owne charges, ſo that the Lords part commeth cleere without diſburſing one pennie. Yet ſhall you ſee many faire houſes in the villages, but they are onely for the owners paſtime, in the prime of ſommer. For then doe they abandon the cities, for a moneth two or three, where vnder the freſh herbes, hedges, and bowers, they ſolace themſelues in as much pleaſure as may be imagined. And for the moſt part euery man hath his mate, with inſtruments of muſicke, and ſuch like pleaſures, as may ſerue for recreation and delight. Thus much of the manners and nature of the inhabitants, now will we ſpeake of the eſtates of the countrey. *Husbandmen.*

The king of Spaine hath the greateſt part for his ſhare, as Naples, and the Duchie of Milan. *The king of Spaine.*

The Pope hath the citie of Rome, Campagnia, part of Maremma, part of Tuſcan, the Duchie of Spolet, Marca d'Ancona, Romagnia, and the citie of Bononia.

The Venetians haue for their part the citie of Venice, with the townes in and about their mariſh, called *La contrada di Venetia, La marga Triuigiana*, a great part of Lombardy, and part of Iſtria. They likewiſe are and haue beene Lords of certaine Ilands, ſome whereof the Turke hath woone and taken from them. *The Venetians.*

The common-wealth of Genoa, hath the territory about them, called at this day *Il Genouéſato*, and anciently *Lyguria*. *Genoa.*

Tuſcan. Tuſcan once called Hetruria, is diuided in diuers Seignio-
ries, whereof the biſhop of Rome holdeth a ſmall part, but
Siena. the greateſt is vnder the iuriſdictiō of Florence. They are the
Lucca. common-wealth of Siena and Lucca, whoſe territories are
Ferrara. not verie great. The Duke of Ferrara hath part of Romag-
Mantua. nia, and part of Lumbardie. The Duchie of Mantua lieth
wholy in Lumbardie, and the Duchie of Vrbin betweene
Parma. Marca d'Ancona and Tuſcan. The Duchies of Parma and
Placentia Placentia are likewiſe in Lumbardie, and holden of the
Church.

Of theſe Princes and common-wealth euery one holdeth himſelfe in his owne territories abſolute prince and gouernour, and maintaineth his eſtate vpon the cuſtomes, taxes and impoſitions of the people. For lightly they haue little or no lands of their owne.

The Biſhop of Rome.

THE eſtate of the Pope is of two ſorts: the one conſiſteth in temporall dominion, the other in ſpiritual iuriſdiction. His temporall dominion is likewiſe diuided into two kinds; the one profitable, & as a man may terme it, immediate, and his peculiar patrimony: the other mediate, and holden in fief of the church. As touching his temporal dominion immediate, he is Lord of a great part of Italy, Maſter of all that that lieth betweene the riuer Fiore and Caietta: betweene Preneſte and the Truentian Streights (except the Duchie of Vrbin.) In that compaſſe are incircled the prouinces of Bonnonia and Romandiolia, Marchia, Vmbria, the Duchie of Spolet, Saint Peters patrimonie, and Tuſcan. It is ſea-
Fertilitie. ted in the verie hart of Italy, ſtretching from the Adriatique to the Tirrhene ſea; and aſwel in regard of ſcituation, as in abundance of prouiſion, eſpecially of corne, wine and oyle it is comparable to any ſtate of Italy: for Romandiola imparteth great ſtore thereof to their neighbours, the Venetians and Slauonians, and yet haue the inhabitants ſufficient for their owne

owne prouiſion.

Marchia reacheth from Tronto to Foglia betweene the Apenine and the ſea: it is diuided into little hils and plains: it is rich of wine, oile, and corne, hauing diuers great townes & caſtles therein. The city of greateſt trading is Ancona, by the opportunitie of the hauen, to which doe trade many eaſterne merchants. The faireſt is Aſcoli; the moſt powerfull Fermo, by reaſon of many fortreſſes ſubiect vnto it. Macerata is a new citie, and becauſe it lieth in the middeſt of the prouince it is the Gouernors ſeat. In ſome yeeres it hath ſupplied the wants of the Venetians, with many thouſand meaſures of corne, and great quantitie of oile. And although Vmbria is not ſo plentifull of graine, as to ſpare for their neighbours, yet is it able to maintaine it ſelfe without buying of others, and in ſteede thereof it is abundantly ſtored with wines, cattle, and ſome ſaffron. S. P. patrimonie and Tuſcane haue often releeued Genes, and at ſome ſeaſons Naples. This territorie bringeth foorth fierce and warlike ſoldiers: and heerein it is reported to excell all the reſidue of the Italian Prouinces. Bonnonia Romania & Marchia, are able to leuie twentie thouſand footmen, and the other prouinces as many. In the time of Pope *Clement*, Marchia alone aided him with one thouſand ſoldiers. The chiefe ſeate is Rome, once the Ladie of the world, and at this day inhabited with one hundred thouſand people. The defenſible places are the caſtle & borough of Rome, Ouietta, Terracine, &c. It is a great credite and commendation to this ſtate, to haue many noble men therein ſo excellent in negotiation of peace and warre, that the reſidue of the ſtates and princes doe moſt commonly chooſe their leaders and lieutenants out of theſe prouinces. If the prince hereof were ſecular; for people and power he might well bee compared with anie ſtate of Italy. *Forces.*

Beſides theſe dominions, the Pope hath the territorie of Auignion in France, wherein are fower cities and fowerſcore walled townes. In Naples he hath Beneuent.

Romagna extendeth from Foglia to Panoro, and from the Apenine to the riuer Po. For temperature and fertilitie it is like vnto Marchia, but hath generally more famous cities, as

Rimini, Ceſana, Faenſa, Rauenna, Furly, Imola, Sarſina, Ceruia, Bertinoro, once a biſhops ſeate, but now tranſlated to Forlimpoli: the nobleſt of all theſe is Rauenna, where ſome Emperors haue kept their courts, and after them their Exarches or lieutenants. And becauſe the name of Exarches is famous in hiſtorie, I will heere relate, their beginning, greatnes, and ending. This dignitie began after that *Narſes* captaine generall to *Iuſtinian* and *Iuſtin* Emperors of the eaſt and weſt Empires had driuen the Gothes out of Italy. The firſt Exarch was *Longinus*, and he, as the kings of the Gothes before him had done, made his reſidence in Rauenna. He aboliſhed the vſuall manner of gouernment by prouinces, and in euerie countrey of account, as likewiſe in Rome, he created Lieutenants, aboliſhing the authoritie of the Senate and Conſuls. Then was the iuriſdiction of the Exarks verie ample, but vpon the comming of the Longobardi into Italy it decreaſed and vaniſhed. When *Pipin*, hauing expulſed *Aſtolpho*, put the church in poſſeſſion thereof: this territorie comprehended Bolognia, Regio, Modena, Parma, Piacenza, Rauenna, Sarſina, Claſſe, Forli, Forlimpoli, and made one eſtate called Pentapoli, which indured 183. yeeres, euen to the yeere of our Lord 741. in which yeere it ended by the taking of Rauenna by *Aſtolpho* king of the Lombards. So that firſt the Romane Emperors, eſpecially *Honorius*, and after him the kings of the Gothes, and then the Exarkes, amongſt all the cities of Italie chooſe this for the ſeate of their courts, which, from amongſt other reſpects, I ſuppoſe to proceed by reaſon of the plentifull territorie (now couered with water) and the conueniencie of the hauen, which at this day is likewiſe choaked. The inſolencie of theſe Exarks towards the Romane Biſhops, cauſed the Archbiſhop of Rauenna to aduance himſelfe againſt the Popedome in the time of *Sueroldo*: which contention endured vntill the daies of Pope *Donno*, or as others affirme, vntill the time of *Agathone*. This prouince was firſt called Flaminia, but *Charles* the great to raze out the remembrance of Exarks, and to make the people willing to obey the Romane prelats, called it *Romagnia*.

As touching his mediat ſoueraignitie, he is Lord peramount of

of the kingdoms of Naples and Sicil, and of the Duchies of Vrbin, Ferrara, Parma, Placentia, and many others.

Where his authoritie is maintained, he hath ſupreme gouernment of all religious orders, and beſtoweth the eccleſiaſticall benefices at his diſpoſe. Hauing thus many ſtringes to his bow, he hath ſo many meanes to raiſe money, that *Xiſtus* the fourth was woont to ſay, that *The Popes ſhould neuer want coine, as long as their hands were able to hold a pen.* *Paul* the third in the league betweene him, the Emperor and the Venetians, againſt the Turke, bore the ſixt part of the charges of this warre. Againſt the Proteſtants, and in aide of *Charles* the fift, he ſent twelue thouſand footemen and fiue hundred horſemen, bearing their charges during the warre: this was he that aduanced his houſe to that honor, wherein it continueth to this day. *Pius* the fift aided *Charles* the ninth king of France with fower thouſand footemen, and one thouſand horſe. *Xiſtus* the fift in fiue yeeres and an halfe of his Pontificie, raked togither fiue millions of crownes, and ſpent bountifully notwithſtanding in bringing conduits and water-pipes into the citie, and in building pyramids, palaces and churches. *The Medici.*

Tuſcan.

IT lieth betweene the Apenine and the ſea: and contemeth from Magra to Tenere aboue 270. miles. It hath larger champians then Lygoria, becauſe the Apenine ſtretcheth not ſo neere the ſea, and ſo enlargeth the plaine. In it are many and large vallies, populous, and rich in commodities. But to ſpeake of particulars; when we are paſt *Magra*, *Sarazana* offereth it ſelfe vnto our view, a citie holden by the Genoiſe with great ielouſie by reaſon of the neighbourhood of the *Great Duke*; and a little higher lieth *Pontremoli*, a caſtle belonging to the king of Spain, of great account, and ſeituated not far from the ſea: then *Aduſſi* and *Carrara*, places famous for their quarries of white marble. *Lucca* ſtandeth vpon

on the riuer *Serchio*, *Piſa* vpon *Arnoy*, and beyond the citie of *Florence*. To the ſtate whereof belong *Piſtoia*, *Volterra*, *Montepulcino*, *Arezzo*, *Cortona*. Thoſe of *Lucca* ſtand vpon their guard for maintenance of their liberties. The citie is 3. miles in compaſſe, ſtrong in ſcituation and walles, and well ſtored with artilery and munition. On the North it confineth with Carfagnana, a fruitfull valley and well inhabited with warlike and ſeruiceable people; on the other parts it is incompaſſed with the Territories appertaining to the *great Duke*. *Piſa* was once of ſuch wealth, that at one inſtant the citizens thereof held war againſt the Venetians and the Genoois. They grew great by the ouerthrow which the Saracens gaue to the Genoois in the yeere 1533. the remainder of which defeature were receiued into the protection of their citie; and declined by the ſlaughter and ouerthrow of their Nauie giuen them by the Genoois neere vnto the Ile Giglio. For thereby they became ſo weak, that not able to ſuſtain their wonted reputation, they were inforced to ſubmit themſelues vnder the protection of the Florentines, againſt whom (when *Charles* the eight inuaded Italie) they rebelled. But being againe reduced to their former obedience, the citie notwithſtanding was in a manner left deſolate, becauſe the citizens (impatient of the Florentine gouernment) paſſed into Sardinia, Sicil, & other places to inhabite: So that the citie wanting inhabitants, and the countrey, people to manure it, the ſcituation thereof beeing low and mooriſh, by reaſon of fenns and mariſhes the aire thereof became infectious. *Coſmo the great Duke* vndertooke to repeople it, and to further his entention he builded there a ſtately houſe for the receit of the knights of Saint *Stephen*, gracing it with many priuiledges, which yet to this day remaine vnaltered.

Lucca.

Piſa.

Florence. Florence is the faireſt city in Italy; it is in compaſſe 6. miles: It is diuided into 44. pariſhes, and into 21. Companies. It hath in it 66. monaſteries, and 37. hoſpitalls. The citizens bought their freedome of the Emperor *Rodolf* for 6000. crownes, as they of Lucca theirs, for 10000. In whoſe time, and euer ſithence it hath floriſhed in great proſperity. For vpon occaſion, the city is able to arme 30000. men, and the countrey 60000.

It

It is ſtrongly walled, the ſcituation thereof being plaine, eſpecially on the North ſide: but on the other parts it is ſomewhat ſubiect to the command of certaine hils, which ouerlooke it, the inconuenience whereof they haue preuented by forts and fortifications. It hath a Citadel builte by Duke *Alexander*, and afterwards inlarged by *Coſmo*. The ſtreetes thereof are ſtreight, and large, very cleane and neat kept. There are to bee ſeene the moſt artificiall buildings of all Europe, both publike and priuate. *Charles* Arch-duke of Auſtrich was woont to ſay, that *It was a citie not to bee ſhewen but on ſolemne daies.* No ſoile is tilled with more arte, diligence and curioſitie: for you ſhall ſee one little peece of ground to bring foorth wine, oile, corne, pulſe and fruits. Yet notwithſtanding it will not affoord ſufficient victuals for a third part of the yeere: wherefore it was not without good reaſon that they ſpent two millions of crownes for the recouerie of *Piſa*.

The qualities of the Tuſcans appeere by the excellency of the Florentines, whom Nature aboue all the prouinces of Italie hath adorned with ſharpenes of witte, frugalitie, prouidence, induſtrie, and ſpeciall inſight into the negotiations of peace and warre: yea their continuall diſſentions & hazards, wherein they haue almoſt liued from the firſt foundation of their citie, I doe nothing ſo much attribute, as to the ſharpenes of their wits. So the ciuil diſcords of the *Piſtorians*, did not onely ruinate their owne eſtate, but therein likewiſe ingaged Florence, yea and as a man may ſay drew after it al Tuſcan, by the factions of the *Neri* and *Bianchi*; for thus it hapned. Two yoong men deſcended of noble families falling out, the one of them chanced to be lightly hurt: the father of the other to extinguiſh all ſparks of malice, and that no further inconuenience ſhould ariſe vpon that quarrel, ſent his ſonne to aske forgiueneſſe of him that was hurt, but the effect enſued contrarie to his expectation; for the father of the wounded gentleman, cauſed his ſeruants to lay hold on him, and to cut off his handes, and ſo ſending him backe againe, willed him to tell his father, that *Wounds were not cured with words but with weapons.* Heereupon grew betweene thoſe two families a mortal

and

and cruell warre, which drewe the reſt of the cities into the quarrell, and was the cauſe of great effuſion of bloud: and the Florentines in ſteede of executing due puniſhment vpon the principall authors of the factions, receiued the baniſhed on both ſides, into their citie: where the *Donati* vndertaking the protection of the *Neri*, and the *Cherſi* of the *Bianchi*, all the citie became diuided into *Neri* and *Bianchi*, this ſedition was not of long time after pacified.

Arezzo. Arezzo being by long diſſention amongſt themſelues almoſt brought to wracke (as the other cities of Tuſcan likewiſe were) was ſold to the Florentines, by *Lewes* of Anioy for fortie thouſand florins of gold; and not many yeeres after, Cortona, by king Ladiſlaus.

Siena. With the ſtate of Florence doth confine that of Siena, a city builded by the Senoni, and of late time become ſubiect to the houſe of *Medici*. It is fiue miles in compaſſe, ſtrong by ſcituation, and whereunto Coſmo the great Duke adioyned a Citadel. From Florence it is not aboue 33. miles diſtant, but the people thereof are much differing in manners and diſpoſition: they ſparing, ſlow, and vnſociable towards ſtrangers, theſe bountifull, of kinde intertainment and affable: they loth to part with money, and prouident, theſe liberall, and onely caring for the preſent: they graue, melancholie, and alwaies expecting their profit, theſe plaine, pleaſant and of cheerefull countenance: the one inclined to traffique and gaine, the other contented with their reuenues, and the fruits of their farmes. Siena hath a large & fruitful territory, wherein are conteined the cities of Pienza, Montalcino, Chiuſi, Soana, and in Maremma, Maſſa and Croſſetto, the ports of Orbetello and Portercole and 26 other walled townes. The coaſt beginneth at Capiglia, and extendeth to the little riuer of Fiore, being all good ſoile for corne, but the aire is ſo infectious, that none liue long there. The ports do all belong to the king of Spaine, togither with the hill Argentano, a place famous by the diſcourſe which *Claudius Ptholomeus* made of the excellencie of the ſcituation for the building of a royall city. In this prouince beginneth the *Patrimony of Saint Peter*, bequeathed to the church by the Counteſſe Matilda.

Campagnia.

Campagnia.

THE chiefe place hereof in auncient time was *Capaa*, the pleasant scituation whereof was the ouerthrow of *Hanibal* and *Hisarmi*. *Cicero* writeth that the Romains were Lords of three Imperial cities, *Carthage*, *Corinth* and *Capua*. The two first being far off they vtterly ruinated; of Capua they long consulted: in the end they concluded that it were extreame tyranny to spoil so noble a citie of Italie. But for their better security, they confiscated the territories thereof, and depriued it of al forme and maiestie of a common wealth. They let the buildings stand to serue for receit of those which should til the ground. Naples *Naples.* is now the chiefe seate, not onely of Campagnia, but of the whole kingdome, and is indeed a princely citie: it is in compasse 7. miles, but narrow: of late times it is much augmented, and would increase continually, if the king of Spaine had not forbidden that they should build no further: whereunto hee was mooued partly by the complaints of the Barons, whose tenants to enioy the liberties granted to the Neapolitans, did forsake their owne dwellings, to seate themselues there: partly by the danger of rebellion, which in so mightie a citie cannot easily be represſed. It is strongly walled and hath in it three castles, the chiefe whereof is castell Nouo, builded by *Charles* of Angeow. The hauen is not very large nor safe, but that inconuenience is somewhat eased by an artificiall key. It hath likewise an Arsnal wherein al instruments of warre are forged. Amongst other religious places (of which sort there are many, and those well maintained) there is the house of pietie, called *il Monte della pieta*, which by ordinarie reuenues and gifts of deuotion, may dispend yeerely 60000. crownes, wherewith amongst other charitable workes it maintaineth through the kingdome 2000. infants.

It is one of the regions belonging to the kingdome of Na- *Calabria.* ples: it is bounded with the riuer Iano and the Terrhen and Ionian seas; it is in compasse aboue fiue hundred miles, and is

diuided into two prouinces; the one lieth vpon the Terrhene ſea, where in ancient times the *Brutians* did inhabit, and that part is properly called *Calabria*: the other lieth vpon the Ionian ſea, and was called *magna Gracia*. It is alſo diuided into the higher and the lower. Of the higher the chiefe ſeat is *Coſenza*, of the lower, *Catanzara*. *Coſenza* is a large citie, *Catanzara*, a ſtrong. Betweene the cape of the *Pillars*, and the cape *Alice*, is Cocrone, a place of very holſome aire. Vpon this territorie anno 1551. the nauie of the great Turke landed & made ſome ſtaie; which was the cauſe that mooued *Charles* the fift to fortifie this citie. It is a thing woorthie to be noted, how much the inhabitants of this countrey in former ages exceeded the numbers of this preſent: for in thoſe daies this citie ſent more men againſt the *Locrians* then the whole kingdome of Naples is now able to affoord, being numbred to 130000. A little aboue that doe inhabite the *Sabarits*, who were alwaies able to arme 30000.

Otranto. At *Tarent* beginneth the countrey of *Otranto*, in auncient times called Iapigia. It conteineth all that corner of land almoſt enuironed with the ſea, which lieth betweene *Tarent* and *Brunduſium*. In it as *Strabow* writeth were once 13. great cities, but in his time onely two, *Tarent* and *Brunduſe*. The aire is very healthfull, and though the ſuperficies of the ſoil ſeem rough and barren, being broken with the plough it is found to be excellent good mould. It is ſcarce of water, neuertheleſſe it yeeldeth good paſture, and is apt for wheat, barly, oats, oliues, cedars, excellent melons, oxen, aſſes, & mules of great eſtimatiō. The people are in their maners more ſimple & plain then their neighbours. In this countrey is bred the Tarantola, whoſe venom is expelled with the fire & muſick, as *Gellius* reporteth out of *Theophraſt*, his hiſtory of liuing creatures. There are likewiſe bred the Cherſidri, ſerpents liuing both on the land and in the ſea: yea there is no part of Italie more cumbred with graſhoppers, which leaue nothing where they come, but would vtterly conſume in one night whole fields full of ripe corne, if nature by ſending the birds called Gaire into thoſe quarters, had not prouided a remedie againſt this miſery. The place at all times of the yeere indureth much damage by haile:

baile: thunder is no more vſuall in winter, then in ſommer.

The prouince is ſcituated betweene two ſeas: the citie is ſeated in an Iland like vnto a ſhip, and ioyned to the Continent with bridges, where the tide ſetteth violently: on the other ſide the two ſeas are ioyned togither by meanes of a trench cut out by mans hand, and is of largenes ſufficient to receiue a galley. Where the citie now ſtandeth, was before a rock, & is holden to be the ſtrongeſt fortres of the kingdome. From thence alongſt the ſhore lieth Cæſaria, now ruined by them of Gallipoli. Gallipoli is ſeated on a ridge of land running into the ſea like a toong, on the furtheſt point whereof ſtandeth the citie, and is of great ſtrength by reaſon of the ſcituation, being fenced with vnacceſſable rockes, well walled, and ſecured by a caſtle: with which motiues of incouragement in the warres betweene the French and the Arragons, the citizens thereof to their great honor, continued euer faithfull to the fortunes of the Arragons. *Tarint.*

It hath been accounted one of the chiefeſt cities of Italie; it is now by their ciuil diſſentions almoſt deſolated; the cauſe, as I take it, wherefore the aire thereabouts is become ſo vnhealthfull: an influence incident to all great cities. For as nothing doth better temper the aire of any place, then the frequency of inhabitants, (becauſe by husbandry and induſtrie they dry vp and drain fenny and vnholſome places, prune and draw ſuch woods as grow too thicke and obſcure; with their fires purge and expell noiſome exhalations, and with their high buildings extenuate groſſe vapours. So on the contrary, there is nothing apter to breede infection, then the deſolation of ſpatious cities: for ſo the places are not onely deprined of the foreſaid helpes, but euen the houſes and their ruins are receptacles of infection, and matter of corruption. Which appereth to be true, by the ruins of *Aquilleia*, *Rome*, *Rauenna*, and *Alexandria* in *Ægypt*. For which inconuenience the *Grecians* neuer built exceeding huge cities; *Plato* would not that his ſhould exceede fiue hundred families, and *Ariſtotle* wiſhed that all his people might at one time heare the voice of one cryer. *Brunduſe.*

Puglia. This prouince extendeth from the confines of *Brunduſe* to the riuer *Fortore*. It is diuided into two territories: the one at this day called *Bari*, and by the Latines *Peucetia*; the other Puglia, and by them, *Dawnia*, diuided each from other by the riuer Lofanto.

In the ſecond part is comprehended Capitauato, conteining in it many great cities, places of trade, and fortreſſes of good account. Amongſt the number whereof is Monfredonia, built by king *Manfredi* in a high place, and healthfull, with a conuenient and ſafe harbour. It lieth vnder the hill Gargano, at this day called Saint *Angelo*, becauſe of the appearing of Saint *Michael*, who is honored there with great deuotion. It ſhould ſeeme that in this hill all the riches of Puglia are heaped togither: it hath plentie of water, an element rare in this prouince. The Saracens finding the opportunitie of the ſcituation thereof, did there fortifie, and therein maintained themſelues a long time: for in truth there is no place better ſeated to moleſt the kingdome, and to command the Adriatique ſea.

Monfredonia.

Abruzzo. It is another prouince of this kingdome: it is bounded with the riuer *Fortore*, and the riuer *Tronto*: in which circuit are conteined many people. Towards the ſea it is a pleaſant and fruitfull countrey, in the middeſt rough and mountainous, and the coldeſt region in the kingdome. The wealth thereof conſiſteth in cattle and ſaffron. The countrey of Malfi is diuided with the riuer Peſcara: the Gouernour thereof reſideth in San-Seuero. This prouince hath no famous place vpon the ſea coaſt, but in the Inland. Beneuento was giuen to the church by *Henry* the 4. in recompence of a tribute which *Leo* the 9. did releaſe to the church of Bamburgh: which in thoſe daies being by diuers caſualties often vſurped, was at laſt reſtored againe to the Church by the armes of the Normans.

Malfi.

Baſilita. It was the habitation of the Lucans, extending frō the riuer Saruo to Lauo: itis a territory rough & mountanous. Towards the ſea-coaſt are *Nico*, *Sorento*, *Maſſa*, *Amalfi*, and *Salerue*, the aire whereof is very temperate; in the vpland are *Cana*, *Nocera*, *San ſeuerino*, and more neere the ſea, *Peſte*, where Roſes blow twice a yeere: *Agropoli*, *Poſſidoniat*, now *Liteſa*,

Licosa, *Policaster*, *Capace noui*, *Venosa*, *Accella*, and *Melfi*, holden second to Naples.

Liguria.

THe places of most note therein are Nizza, hauing a castle of great account: Villafranca a hauen of great receit, but dangerous: Monaco, a notable fort; Ventimilia, a good city. The champian of Arbenga is fertil, but the aire infectious. Finale is a famous Lordship, Noli hath a conuenient harbour for shipping, but Sauona had a better, if the ielous Genooisse had not chokt it.

The people are wittie, actiue, high minded, tale of stature, and of comely personage. They build stately, at home they liue sparingly, abrode magnificently.

Genoa is now the metropolitan citie of the prouince, and by reason of scituation was holden to be one of the keies of Italie. Now it is decaied, partly by reason of their ciuill discords, and partly for that they haue giuen ouer their traffique, and care of the publike good, and haue betaken themselues to liue by retaile and mechanicall trades, altogither regarding their priuate benefite, whereupon not being of puissance, as in former ages, to make good their actions, they were forced to put themselues vnder the protection sometimes of the kings of France, and sometimes of the Duke of Millain. In this citie is a felowship or societie woorthie memorie dedicated to Saint *George*, whose iurisdiction and authoritie dependeth not on the citie, but is absolute of it selfe which grewe by this occasion. The comminaltie by reason of their wars against the Ventians, (which were very chargeable) finding themselues indebted in large summes vnto the merchants, did giue them for satisfaction the reuenue of their customes with a stately house neere adioyning. They to establish orders amongst themselues, ordeined a Counsail of one hundred, and a magistracie of eight, to whose discretion and care they referred all the causes and controuersies of their societie. *Genoa.*

And

And from time to time giuing further credite vnto the citie, for their ſecuritie, they tooke firſt in pledge (and which were afterwards abſolutely paſſed vnto them) certaine landes belonging to the ſtate, ſo that at the laſt getting into their poſſeſſion a good portion of the ſtate-territorie, in al the troubles and alterations of the common-wealth, they haue maintatned their ancient libertie and priuiledges.

Venice.

IT is a citie ſeated at the bottome of the Adritique ſea, fower miles from the neereſt continent, and in ſuch a mariſh, that at euery ebbe the water leaueth the muddie ground vncouered, and at euery full ſea drowneth it againe cleane ouer. Inſomuch that if nature had not of purpoſe made that admirable artifice two or three miles off betweene it and the ſea, it were impoſſible to be inhabited. This banke beginneth at Chiozza, and from thence ſtretching towards the citie of Concordia, by the ſpace of 60. miles, encloſeth the lakes within, in the middeſt whereof was this citie builded, at ſuch time as the Hunns, vnder the conduct of *Attayla*, waſted the Italian prouinces. Through euerie ſtreete (as we terme them) runneth a channell full of water, ſo that you may row through al parts of the citie, if you liſt not to walke by land. But the ſtreetes for the moſt part are verie narrow, and the buildings fairer towards the water then towards the land. The bank is broken in ſeuen places, through the which no ſhip of burden can paſſe to the citie, ſauing at the port of Malamoco, or at the caſtles of Lio. The entry wherof is ſo dangerous (by reaſon of the ſhifting of ſands & ſhelfs) that when any ſhippe commeth in, it muſt of neceſſitie bee brought ouer by a Venetian Pilot.

It was not without good reaſon that *Conterin* deemed this citie to excell and goe beyond all other cities. For if a man do but looke vpon their forme of gouernment, he ſhall ſee a prince of great maieſtie ſitting at the helme of the common-

wealth

wealth, yet both he and his authoritie subiected to the lawes; and therein an Idea of a most excellent monarchie. If hee woulde behold the patterne of a well ordered Aristocracie, then let him cast his eies vpon their councels of the Pregati: or if he desire to see a president of a popular estate, let him set before his view their great councell, consisting at the least of 3000. gentlemen. By the vertue, iustice, and admirable policie of these courses, they haue not onely builded them a city, for scituation, palaces, monasteries, temples, and towers, more admirable then euer the world hath brought foorth any thing monstrously strange, but also (as a man may say) in their gownes for the space of thirteene hundred yeeres they haue beautified it more and more, and preserued it as an vntouched virgin from the violence of any forreine inforcement. At which neither can I greatly maruell, considering their continuall care of warre and warlike prouisions in the securest time of peace. For in their Arsnall they maintaine out 200. gallies, and such a staple of timber, that for euerie day in the yeere, they are able to builde a new galley: and therein (besides mastes, cables, ankers and owers) harnesse, artillerie, powder, and weapons sufficient to arme 100000. men. The *Marques of Guasto* reported, that hee had rather to haue beene Lord of that castle, then of the best citie in Italy. About the workes of this nauie, be it peace or war, their ordinarie retinue of workemen is neuer lesse then sixe hundred daily: and for mariners they neede to go no further then their chanels, wherein, as report goeth, there are 12000 boates daily seruing, euery one guided by a sufficient mariner. It hath beene the opinion of many, that if they had beene giuen to lande seruice, as vnto nauigation and sea seruice, they might haue beene comparable to the ancient Romans. But their gouernment hath rather deserued the commendation of warines, then valour. For sithence Constantinople was woone by the Turks, their reputation hath decreased, some say, by reason they had rather practise with money, then by blowes: contenting themselues rather with the titles of merchants, then of men of warre. Of which blame they seeme not to be altogither inexcusable, for that in the yeere

1508.

1508. after their ouerthrow at Vaila, they yeelded to the Pope his townes and countrey, to the king of Spaine, his ports and hauens, and to the Emperour his demands, declaring themselues his tributaries, offering to pay 50000. Duckets yeerely vnto his maiestie. But whether this practising may be deemed pusilanimity, or wisedome, let them censure, to whom it is not vnknowen, that at the same time, *Iulius* the second, the Emperour, the kings of France and Spaine, with other petie princes, were coniured by the treatie of *Cambrey*, all, and euery one a part, at one instant to make warre against them. Sure I am, that though they were not so valorous, as to resist or sustaine the first assault, they founde neuertheless the meanes to temporize, vntil they might be able to disunite the other princes from the king of France, against whom was the principall quarrel, and vpon whom to be reuenged, they gaue in charge to *Anthonie Iustinian* their embassador with the emperour, to conclude a peace vpon what condition soeuer.

Dominion. Besides those habitations which are in the marishes, and on that long banke betweene them and the sea, as Murano, Mazzorbo, Torcello, Malamoco, Chiozza and others, they haue on the Continent Friuli, Treuiso, Padoa, Vicenza, Verona, Bressa, Bergamo and Crema, with their territories. In Istria and vpon the coastes of Slauonia, they haue Zara and Zebenica; in the mouth of the Adriatique sea the Ile of Corfu, and in the Leuant, Candie.

Reuenues. It is reported, that they leuie fower millions of gold by yeere, which after our rekoning', amounteth to ten hundred thousand pound sterling. A report rather to be woondred at then beleeued, considering they raise it not vpon landes, but vpon customes, and those extremely exacted. For there is not a graine of corne, a spoonefull of wine, salt, egges, birdes, beasts, foule or fish, bought or sold, that paieth not a certaine custome. Vpon occasions the laborers & crafts-men throughout all their dominion pay a rate by poll monthly. They also receiue incredible gaine by the vsurie of the Iewes. For in euerie citie they keepe open shops of vsury, taking ordinarily pawnes after fifteene in the hundred, and if at the yeeres end it be not redeemed, it is forfeited, or at leastwise sold to extreme

treeme losse. Notwithstanding considering their often wars, the fees of the Senators and officers, the numbers of captains and strangers which they intertaine for terme of life, the castles and fortresses which they maintaine, their continuall costly buildings, and the vnreasonable charges of their Arsnal and galleies at sea, it is thought that they cannot lay vp anie great summe at the yeeres end.

By sea they choose generals out of their owne common- *Forces at* wealth: by land, strangers, both for generall, for captains, and *sea.* for all other men of warre. For by land (fearing *Cæsars* example) their law permitteth not any Venetian borne to be captaine ouer the armie; but with the armie they sende diuers of their gentlemen as Legats or prouiditors, who neuer stirre from the side of the captaine Generall, by whom in a maner all thinges are done. The warre being ended, either magistrate returneth home, giuing vp his authoritie, and putting himselfe into order; and this is wholy the maner of the Venetians warfare by land.

By sea euery galley hath one gentleman Venetian for cap- *At sea.* taine, termed Sopracomite, who hath power and authoritie ouer all that are in the galley saue onely in matters of life and death. And ouer the whole Naue, and euery particular captaine one legat (as it were an admirall) that may hang and punish at his pleasure; and direct the nauy whether it shall please him. They faile not euery yeere, be the peace neuer so sure and quiet, to arme forth certaine gallies, against pirats and sea rouers. But if they happen to haue any dangerous warre, they create ouer the whole nauie a captaine generall with heigh and soueraigne authority, not onely ouer the same, but also ouer all maritim prouinces, in manner as great, as was that of the Romain Dictator, saue onely that this in all things obeieth the authority of the senat, and the decrees of the common wealth. There is not amongst them a magistrate of heigher power: for during his authority, the captaines of Ilands and maritim places, legats, leaders and lieutenants are at his command; and when he shall aproach to any city, the clergie is to meete him with solemnities and the keies of gates and castles are to be deliuered vnto him; yea the authority of all other

gouernors for that time ceaſeth: and whoſoeuer in whatſoeuer cauſe may appeale from any other magiſtrate to the captaine generall, who onely if it ſo pleaſe him, may adminiſter iuſtice, diſpoſe of the publique money, and alone himſelfe exerciſe the office of all the reſt. Therefore he is created not raſhly but vpon moſt weighty conſiderations, and that but ſeldome, and vpon moſt vrgent occaſions.

Howbeit the war being finiſhed, it is ordained by law that no generall, legat or captaine may enter into the army with his armed gallies, but preſently vpon his arriuall at Hiſtria, (a prouince 100. miles diſtant from Venice) he is to deliuer to the Marinus their ſtipend and pay, & there to diſmiſſe them. From whence the gallies are to be brought to Venice by ſome few, and there to be laid vp in the Arſenal.

Lumbardy.

LVmbardy aunciently called Ciſalpina extendeth from *Panaco* vnto Seſia, lying betweene the Apenine and the Alps. *Marca Trinigiana*, ſometime called *Venetia*, lieth betweene the Menzo and the Po. Moſt commonly both prouinces paſſe vnder the name of Lumbardy, becauſe there the kings of the Longobards ſeated their dwellings, there ioyned themſelues in alliance, and there proſpered better then in any other place of Italie: Beſides, the qualities of the ſoil, the air, and the inhabitants, hold ſuch correſpondencie, that they ought not to be diſtinquiſhed. This is the richeſt and ciuileſt prouince of Italie; for ſuch an other piece of ground for beautifull cities and townes, for goodly riuers, fields and paſtures, and for plentie of fleſh, foule, fiſh, graine, wine, and fruits, is not to be found againe in all our weſtern world: ariſing partly by the eaſe of nauigable riuers, as Teſino, Adda, Oglio, Menzo, Adige, and Po: partly by channels cut out of thoſe riuers, and partly by the great lakes of Verbano, Lario, and Benaco. No leſſe commodity ariſeth by the plaines paſſable for carts, mules, and other beaſts of carriage. The greatneſſe likewiſe of the Lords of Lumbardy hath beene

beene a great furtherance thereunto. For while the *Viſconti* reigned, this ſtate valiantly mainteined wars of great importance againſt moſt puiſſant princes and powers. And for the emperie hereof happened thoſe notable wars of our daies betweene the emperor and the French king. And no maruaile that two ſuch puiſſant potentates of chriſtendome contented with ſo great effuſion of blood for this Dukedome: for though in many it ſhould not ſeeme great, yet in very truth for the wealth of the countrey and the quantitie, it hath beene of as great reputation as ſome realmes of Europe. Some Dukes whereof haue poſſeſſed greater territory, inioyed wealthier reuenues, and haue beene more puiſſant in wars and more honourable in peace, then diuers princes graced with kingly titles.

Among the cities of theſe prouinces (accounting Venice amongſt the Ilands) Millan without controuerſie holdeth the precedence. It is able to leuie neere 200000. perſons, and hath a large and populous territorie. A citie (ſaith *Guicciardin* moſt populous and rich in citizens, plentifull in merchants & artificers, proud in pomps, and very ſumptuous in ornaments for men and women; naturally addicted to feaſtings, & pleaſures, and not onely full of reioycing and ſolace, but alſo moſt happie in all other nature of comfort and contentment for the life of man. *Millain.*

The ſecond citie of Lumbardy is Breſcia, not for compaſſe, or multitude of people, for it is not able to make 50000. men, but by reaſon of the large iuriſdiction thereof, comprehending therein many large townes, and populous champains, therefore cenſured to be able to leuie 350000. men. Amongſt the townes ſubiect thereto Aſalo and Salo haue the preheminence: amongſt the vallies, Valcamonia, being fiftie miles in length, and therewith populous and full of iron mines. Bologna (if it pleaſe you to account it in Lumbardy) and Verona are alike populous: Verona is larger and of more beautie: Bologna more rich and commodious: as well for that it hath a larger territorie, as alſo for that there is no citie that doth more abſolutely inioy her owne commodities, and doth more freely partake of others, by the great reſort of courtiers, cler- *Breſcia.*

gimen and officers disperſed throughout all the eccleſiaſtike ſtate. To which three things are much auaileable: the Vniuerſitie, where all profeſſions are practiſed; their wealth, which is equally diuided amongſt them; and laſtly their inclination and patience to take paines and do ſeruice.

Padoa. Betweene Verona and Padoa there is no great difference in reſpect of circuit; but Verona hath double the people. Wherefore the Venetians to ſupplie that defect, do as much as they may, grace their Vniuerſitie and the ſcholiers. As in this prouince the cities are great and beautifull, ſo are the fortreſſes many and impregnable. And whereas other prouinces, haue their places of ſtrength on their frontiers, in this, the neerer you approch to the middle, the ſtronger you ſhall ſee the countrey planted and fortified.

Austrich.

BEcauſe the weſterne Empire hath long continued in the moſt noble familie of the houſe of Auſtrich, and ſeuen Emperors haue ſucceſſiuely ſucceeded one another of that line; for the delight of the Reader we will ſpeak ſomewhat thereof. This houſe grew famous almoſt about the ſame time that the Ottoman prince began his Empire, and (as it may ſeeme) raiſed vp of God to ſtand as a wall or bulwarke againſt theſe Turkes and Infidels. *Philip* the firſt, king of Spaine, Archduke of Auſtrich, &c. had two ſonnes, *Charles* the fift, afterward Emperor, and *Ferdinand* the firſt, king of Romanes. To *Charles* as to the eldeſt fell Belgia and Spaine, with the dependancies; *Ferdinand* ſucceeded him in his Lordſhips of Germanie, as Auſtrich, Boheme, Tirol & other prouinces, whereunto by the marriage of his wife *Anne*, Hungarie was adioyned. This *Ferdinand* left three ſons behind him, who although they diuided their inheritance into three parts, yet their ſucceſſors euen to this day, did and do gouerne them as one intier gouernment; their counſels are one; their mindes one, their deſeignments one, moſt liuely repreſenting

the

the ancient *Gerion*, where for the common safetie, if any part be afflicted, euerie member runneth to the succour of the other, as if it were to their peculiar tranquillitie. Their dominion stretcheth so large, and is of such force, that if by reason of the great tract of land lying betweene the Carpathy mountaines and Segonia, they did not border vpon the great Turke (who alwaies constraineth them to looke to their safetie, and to bee at excessiue charges) no prouince throughout the Christian world, could goe beyond them for numbers of people, for wealth and treasure, or for magnificent cities. Any man may perceiue this to be true, that considereth the distance from Tergiste, to the borderers of Lusatia: from Tissa, to Nabus: from Canisia, to Constantia vpon the lake Podame. In this progres are conteined Lusatia, Silesia, Bohemia, Morauia, Austria, and a great part of Hungarie, territories large and ample, abounding with people, corne and riches. Then follow Stiria, Carinthia, Carniola, the Counties of Carinthia, Tirol, Cilia, the Princedomes of Sweuia, Alsatia, Brisgouia, and Constantia. Amongst these prouinces Bohemia is the largest, stretching 140. miles in length, and reported to containe 780. castles and walled townes, and 32. thousande villages. Morauia, Silesia, Lusatia, are as large as Bohemia, but in strength and numbers of people, far inferiour. These three prouinces are fower hundred miles long, and 120. broad: they abound with excellent good horsemen and footemen. The inhabitants of Lusatia (where twenty thousand men fit for the warre may be gathered) are accounted as good footemen, as any other: Stiria rich in mines of siluer and iron is 60. miles broad, and 110. long: Carinthia, a hillie and wooddie countrie, is 75. miles long, and 55. broad: Carniola with the bordering countries vp to Tergiste is 150. miles long, and 45. broad. They are plentifull of corne, wine, flesh and wood. The countie of Tirol is full of mines of siluer and salt pits, and is eighteene German miles long and broad. The territories of Sweuia, Alsatia, and Rhetia do pay little lesse then two myriades and an halfe of ordinary reuenue, and so much extraordinary: besides the 18. cantons of Rethia, are vnder the same iurisdiction. They are so well peopled, that vpon occasion, they are able

Circuit.

Bohemia.

Minerals. Wood.

Corne. Wyne. Flesh. Salt.

Reuenues.

Forces. able to leuie 100. thousand footemen, and 30. thousand horse. I know no other prouince in Europe able to say the like. And therefore the Emperor is not so weake a Prince, as those who are ignorant of the state of kingdomes doe suppose him, reporting his territories to be small, vnprouided of necessaries, poore in monie, and barren of people. But this is certaine, that as he is Lord of a large dominion, fertile, rich, and infinite of people; so let euery man thinke, that by the neighborhood of the Turke, bordering vpon him from the Carpathie mountaines to the Adriatique sea, the forces of a mightier prince may seeme small and ouerlayed. For what prince bordering vpon so puissant an enemie, but either by building of fortresses, or by entertaining of garrisons, is not almost beggered, I will not say, in time of warre, but euen during the secureſt peace, especially considering that the forces of the Turke are alwaies ready, strong and cheerefull, yea better furnished in the time of peace, then any other nation in the hotteſt furie of war. Wherefore it stands him vpon, that is a borderer vpon so powerfull an enemie, either for feare or iealousie to be euer watchfull, and to spare no charges, as doth the Emperor; retaining in wages continually twenty thousand soldiers keeping watch and warde vpon the borders of Hungarie. These aske great expenses, and yet lesse then these, are not to be defraied for the strengthening of other places; besides other expences not meete here to be spoken of. Wherefore, seeing the Turke like an vnsatiable tirant, hath ouerwhelmed so many noble prouinces, and so many flourishing kingdomes, yea hath brought vnder his yoke those cities which were thought impregnable; and those bulwarks which the world deemed could neuer be forced, let vs not shut both our eares, and say, he is farre from vs, when he stands at our doores, yea close by our sides.

Swizzerland.

HEluetia now Swizzerland, on one ſide is incloſed with the Rhene, which diuideth it frō Germanie, on the other, with the mount Iura, which parts it from Burgundy, and laſtly with the lake of Geneua, the riuer Rhone and the Alpes towards Italy. In the daies of *Caſar* this prouince contained 240. miles in length, and one hundred and fowerſcore in bredth: which circuit or territorie ſeeming too narrow a roome, to containe ſo valiant and warlike a people, that not long before had ouerthrowne L. *Caſſius* a Romane Conſul, ſlaine the Conſul himſelfe, and ſold the ſoldiers for bondſlaues; vpon theſe apprehenſions, and the conceite of their owne valour, they began to entertaine a reſolution by conqueſt to gaine a larger territorie, correſpondent to the ambitious greatneſſe of their mindes, and to forſake their own countrey, which firſt gaue them breath and being. In the heat whereof, they prepare for their departure, they prouide victuals, ſtudie tillage two yeeres, buy carts and carriage beaſts, and leaſt any mans courage ſhoulde decline with the time, they make a lawe, that euery man ſhould ſet forwarde in the beginning of the third yeere. Being vpon their way and hearing that *Cæſar* (then Proconſul of France) had cauſed the bridge of Geneua to be hewen downe, and debard them of paſſage by the fortification raiſed betweene the lake and the mount, they ſent ſome of their greateſt princes to *Cæſar*, to intreat a quiet paſſage through the Romane prouince. At their appointed day of audience, hearing *Cæſar* deniall, they reſolue to open their way with the power of their forces. In triall of which proiect, after they had receiued diuers defeatures, they againe ſent their embaſſadors to *Cæſar* to intreate an acceptation of ſubmiſſion, throwing themſelues at his feet, and with many teares and ſupplications crauing ſuch fauorable conditions of peace, as might beſt comfort ſo diſtreſſed a people, and beſeeme the glorie of ſo mightie a conqueſt: which

Situation.

Circuit.

which requests *Cæsar* vpon deliuery of pledges, mercifully granted, enioining them to returne to the countrey from whence they came, and to build the cities and villages which before their comming foorth they had destroied. Euer since which time they retained the reputation of their ancient glorie, but neuer interprised to forsake their limited habitations. The number of men, women, and children that were in that iourney, was 3680000. whereof 920000. were fighting men; of them that returned, and saw the fortune of both their states, was 110000.

From those times vntill the comming of the Saracens into Italy, at what time the Pope sent an honorable Embassage of Cardinals, to intreat their fauour and assistance, they seemed to liue contented within their owne limits; and onely in reward of their many good seruices (imployed for the defence of the church and Christendome) they desired of his Holines, that they might liue in libertie in those places, which they then inhabited, with the vse of their owne lawes and ancient customes. Which the pope not onely granted, but in token of their woorthinesse and valour, he gaue them a red banner with the image of the crucifixe painted therein. After this seruice they againe gaue themselues to a quiet & peaceable life, to follow tillage, & to husbād their granges, vntil such time as certaine noble men their neighbors began to incroch vpon them, and to exercise tyrannicall iurisdiction ouer them. Which kinde of seruitude (as people bearing in fresh remembrance their ancient & generous reputation) being vnable to endure, and inured to giue and not to take the law of their neighbours, opposed their forces against the insolencie of the nobilitie. This discontentment first fell out in the yeere of our Lord 1300. about which time the Count of Auspurgh had placed in one of his castles of Vrania in Valstreet a gentleman proud aboue measure, vnsociable, and in lust insatiable. At first he was secret, but by custome imboldened, in feasts and publike banquets, he would boast, how he had nowe abused one woman then another: at last, amongst the rest hauing rauished a yoong and beautifull damsell, he was slaine by her two brethren. The Count aggreeued heereat offered to do iustice vpon

vpon the offendors; but the inhabitants of that vally valiantly reſiſted, ouerthrewe two or three caſtles in one day, and ſlewe diuers of the nobilitie. Which preſident the Vndervaldenſes imitating, committed the like outrage vpon the gentlemen of their territorie, exclaiming that the tyrannie of the nobles had inforſt them to this action. The firſt of the confederates were Vro, Zurich, and Vndervald; and as well as they might in ſo ſodeine an innouation gaue themſelues to peace, and to reſpect the good of the league and the confederated cities. The reſidue of the noblemen and gentlemen, fearing if this example were left vnpuniſhed, the ſore woulde grow incurable, as an euill which coulde bring foorth no leſſe a miſchiefe, then the vtter loſſe of their command & iuriſdiction, muſtred their friendes and followers, determining either to tame or to raze the cõfederated cities. But the Swizzers well acquainted with the ſtreights and difficult paſſages of the countrey, eaſily fruſtrated the attempts of their enimies, thereby rather increaſing then diminiſhing their libertie. *Lupold* Duke of Auſtria enterpriſing vpon them with a mightie armie for the ſame quarrell, ran the like fortune. So in ſucceeding ages did *Charles* Duke of Burgundy, by their ſeruice vndertaken and performed for the defence of *Rhene* Duke of Loraine.

They are men of ſmall ſtature, and very ſeldome or neuer goe armed, but ſerue onely with a pike or a ſhort ſword, becauſe they feare no other forces ſaue the furie of the great artilerie, from which (they ſay) a breſtplate or curace is not able to defend them. And becauſe of their order they thinke it a matter impoſſible for any forces to breake them, or enter vpon them neerer then a pikes length. In a pitch field without doubt they are excellent good footemen, but to inuade a prouince, they haue little courage, and leſſe to defend it, and commonly where they are not able to maintaine their accuſtomed order of fight, they auaile nothing, as in the warre of Italy was plainly manifeſted, eſpecially when they were put to aſſaults, as at Padoa, & other places, wherein they gaue but weake teſtimonies of their valour: whereas when they fought it out in open field at the pikes length, they caried themſelues very valiantly, inſomuch that at the battaile of Rauenna, if *At Biſorque.*

the French had beene without their aſſiſtance, they had queſtionleſſe loſt the glorie of that daies victorie. For before both armies came to handſtrokes, the Spaniſh had alreadie ouerthrowen the French and Gaſcoin footemen, and if the Swizzers had not ſuccoured them, they had beene all ſlaine or taken. So in the warre of Guyen it plainely appeered that the Spaniſh were more afraid of one band of Swizzers, whereof the king had then waged ten thouſand, then of any of the reſt of the French regiments.

Thus by the reputation of theſe and their former exploits they woone vnto their nation ſo glorious a perpetuitie of their armes and valour, that euer ſithence they haue beene called vnto the aide of diuers princes, and in continuall action vnder ſome one ſtate or other bordering vpon them; but eſpecially vnder the kings of France, of whom they intertaine ſometimes more, and ſometimes leſſe. Sithence the reigne of *Lewes* the 11. they haue beene in perpetuall league, and in their pencion, to whom they giue yeerely fortie thouſand Florins, 20. to the cities, & 20. to particular perſons. They againe are diuided into 13. Cantons, 8. whereof are catholike, the reſidue of the religion. But thoſe of the religion are much the greater, and out of theſe it is, that the kings of France are ſupplied: the reſidue are in pencion of the king of Spaine.

When he demandeth any forces out of their Cantons, they call a Diet, the charge whereof, as likewiſe the ſoldiers wages, the king defraieth. Theſe forreine bands more or leſſe, (of whom he alwaies maketh his battaile, and guard of the Canon; for, as for entring of breaches and giuing aſſaults, they doe expreſly capitulate to be exempt) with the fiue Regiments before ſpoken of in the diſcourſe of France, are his maine moderne forces on foote: but when he woulde haue greater numbers, he giueth his captaines commiſſions to take vp ſoldiers through the whole Realme, (not by preſſe as with vs) but by ſtriking vp the drum, when if any come voluntarily, and take pay, they are inrolled, and inioyned to ſerue, otherwiſe not.

Gouernment. The gouernment of theſe thirteene Cities with their dependancies (which they terme Cantons) is meerely popu-

ler.

ler. For though the members ſeeme to be ſeperated, yet liue they as one body firmely knit and vnited, hauing a chiefe magiſtrate ouer euerie territorie choſen and created by the comminaltie of euery particular citie, and euery citie hath his particular counſaile and place of aſſembly, ſaue onely when they are to ſit vpon matters of importance, and ſuch as concerne the generall Eſtate, then they appoint a generall Diet, and that to be held in any one of the cities, which they thinke moſt fit and conuenient; whereunto fower or fiue of the moſt principall of euerie citie are bound to reſort. In all their conſultations for the moſt part, they are conformable one to another, and becauſe one citie is as free as another, hauing no one chiefe Gouernour ſuperior to any other, in caſe the cauſe (bee it peace or warre) concerne the vniuerſall ſtate of all the Cantons, looke how the maior part of voices ſhall ſwaie in the Senate, ſo it preuaileth, and that which the greater number reſolue vpon, is without more adoo put in execution. The benefit which they gaine by a common war, is diuided in common: but if ſometimes two or three vnited Cantons purchaſe any bootie by their peculiar armes, of that purchaſe the reſidue can claime no ſhare. Yet hath it hapned that the reſidue thinking themſelues iniuried in not participating in generall of like praies and booties, haue raiſed diuers controuerſies, and becauſe (as aforeſaid) they are equallie free, and as great is the ſoueraigne authoritie of one citie as of another, both parties haue appealed vnto the French king: who vpon hearing of the cauſe in queſtion, gaue iudgmẽt, that *a particular gaine appertained to particular perſons.* Therefore when they are either occaſioned or determined to make any particular warre, the vnited Cantons erect lights and make bonfires; but when they are to raiſe forces in generall (as ſuppoſe they ſhould for the French king of 2500. foote) firſt they ſtrike vp the drumme; then all the cities preſent as many perſons as they thinke good: which may be to the number of fiue and thirtie or fortie thouſand, of whom after the captaines haue culd out their limited proportions, the reſidue are licenſed to depart to their owne homes. Euerie citie hath his principall ſtanderd, with their peculiar armes and deuiſes beaten

therein, to distinguish one people frō another. And because no politike bodie can stand or continue without a head (although in no case they will tolerate one absolute Gouernour ouer the whole) yet are they contented to submit themselues to the gouernment of one particular Magistrate in euery particular citie: him they terme Vnama. The election of which officer is on this maner. On the first sunday in Maie the principal of all the houses and families through euery Canton of all sorts and qualities, assemble themselues, either in some meadow, or else in the chiefest streetes of their citie; where all of them taking their places in order, the Vnama, whose time of office is now expired, seating himselfe in a place somewhat aboue the rest, after some staie, riseth vp, and maketh a speech vnto the people, excusing himselfe in good and fitting termes of his insufficiency to discharge the weight of the office committed vnto his charge, and craueth pardon of that which he hath either through ignorance or negligence committed to the preiudice of the common good, and therewithall offereth to resigne his determined office into the handes of the people. Immediately vpon this resignation, with a loud voice he nominateth the partie, whom in his iudgement hee thinketh woorthie to succeed in his place. He that is nominated commeth foorth before the multitude, and presenting himselfe before them, after some speeches nominateth a second: and the second, with like ceremonie a third. The nomination being ended, the chiefe of the Companies demaund of the people which of these three thus nominated, they are willing to elect. So naming them a new, one by one, the multitude lift vp their hands at the naming of him, whom they desire to be their Gouernour. And oftentimes it falleth out, that he that hath beene once Vnama, in desert of his iustice and good carriage towards them, hath beene chosen againe the second time. This election finished, they proceed to the choise of other officers. This officer continueth in his place three yeere, and although he be the chiefest among them, yet goeth he little better attired then the meanest, onely attended with fiue or sixe persons. He dwelleth in his owne house, because they imploy the publike places for the holding of the Diets, the

the keeping of their munition and artillerie, and other furniture belonging to the warres. In criminall cauſes he can doe nothing without the counſell of the fifteene, but in ciuill matters, he hath larger limitation.

Next the Vnama is that officer of iuſtice, who is as it were the Chancelor, and the ſecond perſon in the ſtate. After him are certaine counſellors, men well experienced in affaires of princes, and occurrance of prouinces. Then the *Chamberlaine*, and his is the charge of the munition and publique treaſure. Next him are the 4. Deputies, in authority greater then the Councellors, and may do many things in abſence of the Vnama, ſo as the Chancellor be preſent. Theſe with the Vnama make the fifteene, which gouerne the ſtate aſwell in peace as in warre, and are euermore preſent at the hearing and deciding of all occurrances ariſing within the territorie of their owne Canton. Theſe in effect manage all matters in the common wealth, and are from yeere to yeere confirmed by the people, although (as doth the Vnama) they continue their office for three yeeres. Theſe ſend gouernors to the caſtles on the frontiers, and to decide inferior matters they allow ten perſons choſen out of the meaner ſort, but the parties in controuerſie may appeale to theſe fifteene: other Iudges, or further appeales (as in the ciuill law) they haue not to flie vnto. For their chiefeſt care, is their tillage and warfare, they couet to liue ſimply aud plainely, and not to intrap one another in quarrels and ſuits of law. The partie euicted is ſeuerely puniſhed. Neither will they ſuffer any of their people to goe to law in other countries, and if any offende therein, hee is greeuouſly chaſtened.

Denmarke.

ALthough it may ſeeme needleſſe to make any mention of Sweueland, becauſe it is as it were ſcituated in another world; and with whome there is no great entercourſe of trading, yet for the ſpatious largeneſs thereof, it may well deſerue a place amongſt other kingdomes

ſpoken

ſpoken of in theſe relations. It is ſcituate in that part of Europe which ſome terme Scandia, others Scandania, or Balthia; from whence iſſued the Gothes and Vandales, the verie treaders downe of the Romane Empire. It is ſubiect both to the Daniſh and Sweuian crowne. The king of Denmarke beſides the Cimbrian Cherſoneſe (where Helſatia, Theutomarſia, the Dukedome of Sleſia, Flensburge, Frieſland, and Iuthland, regions fruitfull, repleniſhed with ſtore of cattle and wilde beaſts, doe lye) retaineth other ſpatious Ilands, the beſt whereof ſtand in the entrance of the Balticke ſea, being 15. in number, all comprehended vnder the name Denmarke. The chiefeſt of them is Selandunia, containing 60. miles in length, and little leſſe in bredth. It excelleth the reſt, both for the number of villages, the mildenes of the aire, and becauſe it hath beene and is the ſeate of their kings. Hee hath alſo Gothland vnder his iuriſdiction, which is placed right ouer againſt Gothia. One of his kinſemen hath the gouernement of Oſilia, a pretie Iland in the greater gulfe of Liuonia; and ruleth thoſe fatte and plentious countries which lie on the continent of Liuonia. Scania likewiſe acknowledgeth his ſoueraigntie; and he holdeth the kingdome of Norway, which from the confines of Scania extendeth and ſtretcheth northward 1300. miles to the caſtle of Wardhouſe, vpon which border the Lappians. The Iles adioining thereto, Sania, Setland, and Faria (lying in the maine ſea) are in his tenure. In times paſt the people of Norwey haue beene of great puiſſance: they afflicted England, ſcourged France, and therein obtained a prouince called to this day Normandie. In Italie they conquered the kingdome of Sicill and Apulia. And in the holy warre, *Boemond* leader of the Normans, woon the principalitie of Antioch. In the north Ocean (beſides that of Frieſland, and the ſea coaſt of Iſland, and Groinland) he holdeth the dominions of the foreſaid Ilands of Shetland and Faria. The Orchades acknowledge the kings of Norwey for their lords, although they are ſubiect to the Scottiſh crowne. Sithence the kingdome of Norwey became elective and turmoiled with ciuill wars and inteſtine diſcords, it came to the poſſeſſion of the Daniſh kings, who, that he may hold it ſurely in-

intreateth the inhabitants cruelly, ſpoiling them of their ſubſtance, and to leaue no hope of better fortune to this miſerable people, he holdeth fortified all the creekes and hauens of the ſea coaſt.

The wealth of the kingdome conſiſteth in the abundance of cattle and ſea fiſh, whereof there is ſuch ſtore, that of the herring fiſhing onely, a mightie maſſe of money is yeerely gathered; ſo huge is the number of all ſort of fiſh, that at ſometimes of the yeere a ſhip can make but ſlowe way in this ſea; and the mariſhes and meadowes adioining thereunto are very pleaſant and fauory to the feeding of their cattle. Scania is rich in corne, and paſture, and well repleniſhed with people: Norwey hath no riches of any moment, except timber fit for the erecting of houſes, and building of ſhips (from thence tranſported into Holland and Flanders) and cattle, affording great ſtore of cheeſe and milke. Some profite alſo ariſeth of a kinde of fiſh dried in the wind, which the Dutchemen call Stockfiſh. It is taken in Ianuarie, and laid in the winde and cold, vntill it be indurate and hardened like wood, and then carried into diuers regions as a kinde of ſuſtenance. The greateſt matter of gaine to the king of Denmarke is that narrow ſea or ſtreight, betweene Cronburg and Eltzenburg, commonly called the Sound, which is a paſſage ſo narrow, that no ſhipping can paſſe that way, without the licence and fauour of the watchmen, keeping garriſon there to receiue the impoſtes, and cuſtomes of the arriuing veſſels: it is eaſily gathered to what ſome of money that impoſt amounteth, by the infinite number of ſhipping of Holland, Zealand, France, England, Scotland, Norwey, and the Baltike ſea, that ſaile in thoſe ſeas, and of neceſſitie muſt paſſe the iawes of that narrow ſtreight. The inhabitants are as greedie of Rhæniſh, French, and Spaniſh wines, the ſpices of Portugall, and the fruits of Andoluzia, as they againe are needie of the waxe, honie, skins, and corne, which are brought thither from Pruſſia, Liuonia, Moſcouia, and the bordering nations.

Riches. *Cattle.* *Fiſh.* *Corne.* *Timber.* *Stock-fiſh.* *Cuſtome.*

Touching his powerablenes in land ſeruice, it was neuer ſeene that he enterprized any iourney of reputation, but that againſt the Theutomarſi, vpon whom king *Valdemar* laide

Forces at land.

the

the yoke of subiection: but falling againe into rebellion, after many chances of warre, beginning in the yeere 1500. they were vtterly vanquished by *Frederick* the second, in the yeere of our Lorde 1558. Before these ouerthrowes they discomfited *Iohn* the sonne of king *Christian* the first.

At sea. What this king is able to performe at sea, may be gathered by the nauies, which vpon occasions he hath rigged to sea at the intreatie of *Henrie* the second king of France. *Christian* the second sent a nauie of a hundred ships into Scotland against the English, and in them ten thousand land soldiers. But for as much as it is apparant that he is lord of so ample a sea coast, and possesseth so manie hauens in Denmarke, Scania, Norwey, and so many Ilands without the Baltike sea, it is most likely that hee is able to assemble a mightie fleete of ships if money were not wanting: which as I take it, cannot but often faile him, considering that in his whole kingdome there is growing no merchandise of value (excepting seafish) neither is there any famous Mart towne, which is able to draw, or long to maintaine traffique with other nations. The greatest matter is his customes of the sea townes, the profit of certaine mines in Scania, the horses & cattle of the Danish Chersonesse, the timber and fish of Norwey, and the Ilands. It hath beene obserued, that fiftie thousand oxen hath beene driuen out of these prouinces into Germanie; for which, tole hath beene paid at Gutthorpe. He reapeth some profite likewise of Wardhouse, whether the English of late yeeres haue sailed betweene Norwey and Groenlant; some of Colmogro, others to Stockholme, not farre from S. Nicholas, where they traffique with the Russies for waxe, hony, and flaxe: thither resort likewise Hollanders, Scots, and Frenchmen. Almost in the middle of this baie is an Iland and towne called Wardhuis, which *Frederick* the second caused to be strongly fortified, and heere the merchants pay their custome.

Sweueland.

Sweueland.

THe king of Sweueland raigneth in Scandia, which is larger then Denmarke; for it is accounted a iourney of fiue and forty daies from the borders of Scandia to Lapland & the coaſt of the Balticke ſea is little leſſe then fower hundred miles long, a tract of land eſteemed larger then France, and Italy. In Liuonia this king poſſeſſeth Riualia, the Narue, Danouia, & other peeces of good eſteeme, the Ilands Vlander, Alandes, and many other places (not woorthy ſpeaking of) ſcituated in the Sweuian & Finland ſea. Theſe regions beſides Liuonia are diuided into three kingdomes, Gotland, Sweueland, and Vandalia, which againe are ſubdiuided into eleuen prouinces, and twelue Counties; among which the Lappians are not accounted, becauſe this people (though inhabiting a larger countrie then Sweueland) cannot be termed to liue vnder any certain dominion, bicauſe of their miſerie, pouertie, and wandring from place to place through woodes and mountaines; but they, who haue anie manner of certaine abode, or ſetled habitation, are vnder the Sweuiſh dominion, and pay rich skins for their tribute.

Of the three kingdomes whereof wee ſpake, Gotland bordereth with Scandia, and is diuided into eaſt and weſt, both bounded vpon the lake Weret: in the midſt whereof the king (delighting in the pleaſantneſſe of the place) keepeth his court. Twentie fower riuers do run into this lake, yet it emptieth it ſelfe but by one mouth. The inhabitants for the exceſſiue noiſe of the waters, call it in their toong, the Diuels Head. The word Gothia ſignifieth a heauenly country, which doth well agree thereto for the abundance of ſuſtenance: no region being comparable vnto it for fertilitie of fleſh, fiſh, and corne. *Gotland.*

Next followeth Sweueland, larger then Norwey and Gotland both togither. In Sweuelan is Vpſalia their chiefe citie, and Stockholme (the kings ſeate.) Stringa, Enuecopia, *Sweueland.*

Orogundia, Arboia, Arosia.

Finland. Then comes Finland scituate betweene the Balticke and Finland baie, where stand Abo the chiefe citie, Raugina and Augo both famous Mart townes: Vames, Viburge, and Castleholme in the Alandian Ilands. The husbandmen inhabite without the townes; and by reason of the plentie of timber, the woods, vallies, and other places defended from the fury of the northren winde, they liue heere in verie good sort, keepe in their houses flockes of cattell, and instruments to digge, to build, or to make any thing necessarie for the life of man: and this is the reason, that townes heere are neither so faire nor so frequent, as in Germanie or England. Ouer and aboue cities and villages, there are accounted 1433. parishes; in some of which a thousand people, or (as they terme it) a thousand housholds or fires do inhabite: but there are few of these parishes, in which at the least there are not one hundred families. By this a man may iudge the number of this people, especially if he consider the fruitfulnes of their generation: for the women of Finland by a secret operation of their beere (as some thinke) become exceeding fruitfull. The men liue heere very long, chiefly in the most northerly parts; neither is it miraculous amongst them to see a man liue aboue an hundred and thirtie or fortie yeeres. This long liuing is the true cause of their propagation: for where men liue shortest liues, there the vertue of generation must needs soonest decay: and therefore our Lord God in the beginning of the world did permit mankinde to liue seuen hundred yeeres and more, that the world might the sooner be peopled, and the act of generation (which now for the shortnes of our liues is determined within fortie yeeres) was then more vigorous at one hundred and vpward, then in this our age, at twentie.

Riches. The riches of this kingdome consisteth in plentie of victuals, which this word Gothia (signifying an heauenly region, as wee saide before) and Finland (signifying a good

Prouision countrey) do well witnes. Their prouision is flesh, fresh fish, salt fish, fish dried in the smoke and sunne, corne and beere: whereof there is so great abundance, that it is a hard thing to see a begger amongst them, & trauellers are there freely entertained.

tertained. It is so rich in mines of lead, copper, siluer, and some gold, that no prouince in Europe may compare therewith. And these mines are to be founde in euery place, if the countrey people (bound to carrie wood to the mines, and to other seruile workes) did not hide and hinder the discouerie thereof as much as in them lieth. Most fine siluer is found in the prouince of Vestros; and more would be, were it not for the enuie of the inhabitants, who though they know not the vse of trying of mettals, doe notwithstanding murmur that anie strangers shoulde imploie their labours therein. And this their frowardnesse towards strangers ariseth not of hatred, but vpon a iealousie that they should be ouerreached, or otherwise abused by them: for by nature they are simple and well meaning, not giuen to ambition, nor infected with auarice. *Minerals.* *Siluer.*

The kings reuenue consisteth in fower things; the *tenths* of Ecclesiasticall liuings, *mines*, *tributes and customes*. The profits of the Church liuings amount to a good summe of money: for in this kingdome there were seuen cathedrall churches: threescore Monasteries of men and women endowed with most rich reuenues. First *Gustan*, and after, his sonne *Eric* seized the greatest part thereof into their possessions. Some of the foresaid mines are wrought at the kings charges; some at the charge of priuate persons, allowing onelie the tenth part. *Reuenues.*

Of three copper-workes I haue knowne the tenth part (which is the kings) to amount to the value of three thousand dolars yeerely: heereby estimation may be made of the siluer and lead. But his taxes doe farre surpasse all his other incomes: for hee leuieth the tenth of Rie, Wheate, Barley, fish, oxen, skins and such like. Of the tenth of oxen at some times he hath gathered eighteene thousand, and with them maintaineth his court, his officers, his nauie, and his armies: for in the time of warre, either with the Dane or Moscouite, he alloweth his soldiers victuals, and by this meanes prouideth it at verie easie rates, as well offending as defending. The marriage of the kings daughters is at the disposition of the people, and they allow them besides siluer, plate and *Copper.* *Taxes.*

other gifts, one hundred thousand dolars for a dowrie. Of the vplandish people and others, which paie not the imposition of victuals, the king is accustomed to exact of euery poll according to his abilitie, fiue dolars or more yeerely. The customes are paid in the hauen townes; the chiefe whereof are Calmare, Lodhuis, and Stockholme (whereat some times three hundred ships of burthen are to be seene) Abo, Auge, Reualia, Parnouia, Narue. It is thought that the king doth lay vp in his treasuries sixe or seuen hundred thousand dolars ouer and aboue the expences vpon the fortresses of Reualia and Viburgh.

Forces. Footmen. There are maintained in Sweueland and Gothland about thirtie two companies, euery troupe consisting of fiue hundred or sixe hundred soldiers, all harquebusiers, alwaies readie to march, whither occasion calleth. Bicause of the thicknes of the woods, the horsemen serue with petronels, and seldome vse pikes or lances. These are most excellent footemen; for euerie soldier is able to make and furnish himselfe with any furniture whatsoeuer, euen to the making of his owne flaske and tuchboxe; as likewise the common people in Peruuia, and the neighbouring prouinces, being contented with a little, haue alwaies accustomed to make all implements for their houses and bodies; to build, to weaue, to play the taylors, to sow, to reape, and to forge tooles fit for their busines. And as for those trades, which are neither common nor necessarie, as to paint, to worke in siluer, and such like, there are notwithstanding found among them verie good workemen, wanting rather matter then arte to worke vpon. *Horsemen.* The Sweuian horsemen are deuided into thirteene companies: Sweueland and Gothland maintaine eleuen, and Finland two; and vpon necessitie they can raise a greater force: for the Dukedome of Vrmeland (as report goeth) is able to furnish better then ten thousand men with horse. In Marchland there is such plentifull breede of horse, that there they are solde at a verie lowe rate: both these prouinces are in Gothland. Their horse is not so bigge bodied as the Friesslander, but exceeding, strong, hardy, actiue, able to endure trauell, and fed with a little. I will not omit to speake of two noble vsages of the king of Sweueland towards his

his ſoldiers: one is, that if a ſoldier be taken priſoner, hee is ranſomed at the kings charges: the other, that if his horſe be ſlaine, the king beſtoweth an other vpon him. To his captaines, and thoſe which ſerue on horſebacke, in part of payment of their wages, hee giueth yeerely a garment, which the Romanes termed *Idolis*, and may bee taken for a caſſocke.

Sea forces.

As touching their ſea affaires by reaſon of their huge ſea coaſt, and infinite hauens, the kingdome ſwarmeth with marriners and ſhipping, which the king may arreſt in his dominions, as other princes are accuſtomed to do: he maintaineth commonly fiftie ſhips of warre, whereof euerie one carrieth fortie pieces of ordinance, more or leſſe. King *Guſtan* firſt brought in the vſe of galleies. In the warre which king *Iohn* waged with the Danes (before the peace treated on at Stetin was agreed) he put to ſea ſeuentie great ſhips, beſides others of ſmaller burthen, in which were 22000. fighting men. In the ſommer time they warre at ſea; in the winter at land: for then the riuers are frozen, as likewiſe the ſea neere the ſhore for a great ſpace. Seeing I haue ſpoken of guns, I will adde this much, that the king is thought to haue about eight thouſand great pieces, the moſt part of braſſe, and that he could caſt many more if he had more ſtore of tinne. In the caſtle of Stockholme onely are numbred fower hundred.

Borderers.

Vpon the weſt ſide of Sweueland is Denmarke; on the eaſt Moſcouie, with both which he hath had long warre. The Sweuians haue ſuffered much loſſe by the Denmarkes: for king *Chriſtian* the ſecond beſieged Stockholme, and forced it, committing all kinde of crueltie againſt the inhabitants, filling the citie with bloud and dead carcaſſes. The title which the Dane pretendeth to the crowne of Sweueland, is the cauſe of their enimities. The hauens, the ſcituation of the country, and eſpecially Gotland (which is a member of Gothia, and therefore the Sweuian claimeth it as his right) affoordeth the Dane this facilitie of inuading it at his pleaſure. After *Guſtan* recouered the kingdome, he and his ſonne *Henrie* and *Iohn* raigned ſucceſſiuely: and although bloud enough hath beene ſhed in the

the wars betweene *Guſtan* and the Danes, yet the kingdome hath retained her honor: and the citie of Lubecke (the mightieſt ſtate in that ſea) ſometimes by confederating with the one, ſometime with the other, doth in ſo euen a ballance peaſe the differences of theſe two nations; as it ſuffereth not the one to practiſe againſt the other, vpon the perill that may enſue to the offender. In warring with the Moſcouite the Sweuian hath the moſt aduantage, becauſe Finland (which bordereth vpon Ruſſia) by reaſon of the great lakes and mariſhes, whereof it is full, yeeldeth hard and perillous paſſage to the enemie, oftentimes ſwallowing vp whole armies in thoſe congealed waters: there he keepes the caſtles of Viburge, Narue, Reualia and other piles and pieces vpon the borders of the great Duke of Moſcouia, excellent well fortified, as bridles to ſtop his violent courſes. In which, he doth very wiſely; for thoſe peeces which lie in the territories of our enimies are to be regarded moſt carefully, becauſe they bring foorth two notable effects: firſt, they defend what is ours, and offend what is the enimies. The further they are diſtant from our borders, the better they ſtand vs in ſteed: for while the enemy is occupied in beſieging thereof, our owne ſtate ſtandeth in quiet, and time affoordeth meanes for reſcue, or deliuerie thereof at leyſure, and that without ſpoile to our owne people, or loſſe of our proper reuenues. They grieue the enemie with ſo much the more dammage, by how much the neerer they are ſcituated vnto them. Of this effect was Caleis in the poſſeſſion of the Engliſh, and the places which the Spaniards and Portugals hold in Africke. But the fortreſſes built in our owne borders, ſerue to no other end then to defend what is already ours, and that to our great diſaduantage: for as often as they are inuaded, all things are done at a ſudden, and it cannot be auoided, but ſomewhat will fall to the ſpoile of the enemy. To end with the king of Sweueland, he is ſo much better able then the Moſcouite to defend his territories, by how much ſea-forces ioyned to land-forces are able to preuaile againſt a ſtate furniſhed with land-forces onely.

Poland.

THis kingdome was neuer ſo ſpatious as at this day, the great Dukedomes of Lituania and Liuonia being ioyned thereto. It ſtretcheth from the floods *Notes* and *Obra* (which deuide it from *Marchia*) and *Odera*, (which ſeperateth it from Sileſia) to *Bereſay* and *Boriſthenes*, which two parteth it from *Moſcouia*. It reacheth from the Balticke ſea, to the riuer Nieſter, which diuides it from Moldauia; and to the mountaines *Carpathie*, which ſeperate it from *Hungarie*. By this limitation (from the borders of *Sileſia* to the frontires of *Moſcouia*, betweene the weſt part and the eaſt) it containeth 120. Germaine miles; and from the vtmoſt boundes of *Liuonia*, to the borders of *Hungarie*, not much leſſe. So allowing the forme thereof to be round, it is farre larger then a man would take it to be.

It containeth many and goodly large prouinces, as Polonia the great and the leſſe, Maſſouia, Pruſſia, Ruſſia, Volinia, Liuonia, and Lituania. Among theſe prouinces, Poland was the proper inhabitation of the Polonians; but Pruſe, part of Pomeran, Podalia, Volinia, Maſouia and Liuonia haue been obtained and gained by armes. Lithuania and Samorgathia (prouinces of Ruſſia) were the inheritance of the houſe of *Iagello*. For in the yeere 1380. *Iagello* then Duke of Lithuania, tooke to wife the Princeſſe *Hedinge* the laſt of the bloud royall of Polonia, and was inſtalled king on three conditions: the firſt, that he ſhould become a Chriſtian; the ſecond, that he ſhoulde cauſe his people to doe the like; the third, that he ſhoulde vnite his principalities to Poland. Theſe couenants were accompliſhed in our age, when the race of *Iagello* ended. For when the people were vnwilling by depriuing the heires (which had right to the Empire of their iuſt inheritance) to ſubiect it to election, they alwaies called vpon the performance of the conditions, hoping that the nobilitie and people of Lituania would not looſe their honor and dignitie by

by this mixture: yet at laſt, on the one ſide, when they conſidered the iſſue of their princes to faile (for *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* was the laſt heire male) and on the other ſide, fearing the force of the Moſcouite, they agreed to vnion and election. In times paſt Liuonia was the ſeate of the *Dutch knights*, and they had therein their chiefe gouernour, whom they termed the *Great Maſter*: But in the yeere 1558. being ſpoiled of the greateſt part of their territorie by the great Duke of Moſcouie, they fled to *Sigiſmund* king of Poland, who tooke them into his protection, and vntil the raigne of king *Stephen* 1582 the prouince was neuer regained.

Poland the leſſe.

Pruſia. Liuonia.

For the moſt part, Poland is a plaine countrie, and (but for certaine mountaines, (rather hils then mountaines) ſcituated in the leſſer Poland, and diuiding it from Pruſſland) all the reſidue of the countrie ſtretcheth it ſelfe into moſt ample plaines, wherin are very many woods, eſpecially in Lithuania. The greater and the leſſer Poland are better inhabited then any other prouince of the kingdome. The like may almoſt be ſpoken of Ruſſia, for the neerenes of the ſea, concourſe to the hauens, and commodiouſnes of the riuers. Pruſſia and Liuonia haue fairer cities, goodlier buildings, and by traffique and concourſe of merchants, greater plenty of riches. For, when the *Dutch Knights* were Lords of the countrie, they builded cities like thoſe of Germanie, and all alongſt the ſea coaſt for the ſpace of fowerſcore miles many caſtles and peeces of good eſteeme. They haue many faire hauens of good woorth, and are Lords of all the traffique between Poland and the Baltick ſea: which is a thing of great value and conſequence. For the riuer Viſtula ariſing in the extremeſt bounds of Sileſia, watereth all Poland the leſſe, and part of the greater, Mazouia and Pruſſia, and then falleth into the Balticke ſea below Danske, whether it tranſporteth the greateſt quantity of Rie, corn, honie and waxe of the whole kingdome; a iourney of fower hundred miles. From another coaſt the moſt famous riuer Duina ariſing out of the lake Ruthenigo, and parting Liuonia into equall portions, falleth into the ſea about Riga, a city of great concourſe. There are in Pruſia and Liuonia many lakes, amongſt which one is called the newe ſea, one hundred miles long:

long: in Liuonia is a lake called Berhas, more then 400. miles long frō thence spring the riuers, which running by Pernouia & Narue, make two notable hauēs for traffike. Between these two cities standes Riualia, giuing place to neither in beautie. Samogithia is more rude and barbarous then the other prouinces, and Podalia more barren: which is not to be attributed to the nature of the soile (for it is most plentifull of those commodities which the climate vnder which it lieth can afoord) but to the crueltie of the Tartars, which so vexe it with continuall inrodes, that the inhabitants are driuen either to flie for feare, or to be ledde away captiues by these barbarous people. *Riualia. Samogithia. Podalia.*

The riches of Poland, are the aboundance of corne, and all sorts of graine, which grow there in so plentifull sort, that in the yeere 1590. and 1591. it releeued not onely the bordring nations, oppressed with famine and scarcitie, but also yeelded some portion of releefe to the wants of the Genowaies, Tuscane, and Rome. It floweth with honie and waxe; And where as in all these northerly nations of Poland, Lithuania, Russia, Muscouia, there are no wines growing, insteed thereof, nature hath bestowed vpon them incredible quantities of honie, whereof these people do brew an excellent kind of Beuerage. The Bees make honie either in the woods where they finde the trees made hollow by rottennes or mans industrie, or in hiues set in the open field by the countrey people, or in holes of the earth, or in any place where they can finde neuer so small a liking. *Riches. Corne. Hony. Waxe. Beer.*

It aboundeth with flaxe and hempe, with sheepe, cattle, and horses. Amongst the beasts of the wood are founde wilde oxen, wilde horses, and the bufle, which cannot liue out of the wood of Nazouia. The riches of the land consist in the salt-pits of Bozena and Velisca, in the territorie of Cracouia. *Flaxe. Hempe. Cattle. Salt.*

The reuenues of the kingdome for the most part are equally diuided betweene the noblemen and gentlemen; for no man is left so rich by inheritāce, that he may exceed others aboue measure; and the greatest reuenue exceedeth not fiue and twentie thousand dukets. Onely the Dukes of Cur- *Reuenues.*

land and Regimount exceed this meane. For although they are feodaries of the kingdome, and acknowledge the king as their ſuperior, yet are they not as liuely members of the ſtate; they come not to the diets of the kingdome, they haue not their voices in the election of the prince, neither are they accounted as naturall Lords of the kingdome, but for ſtrangers, (as in truth they are:) the Duke of Curlan being of the houſe of Ketleri, and the Duke of Regimont, of the familie of Bradenburge.

Pruſia. All Pruſſia did belong to the *Dutch knights*, who had their *Great Maſter* reſident there, who when hee was not able to withſtand the forces of the Polonians, yeelded himſelfe feodarie to king *Caſſimere*: afterwards when *Albert* of Brandenburge their Great Maſter became a Proteſtant, he was created duke of Pruſſia; and the countrey diuided into two parts; the one regall, immediately holden of the crowne, the other Ducall, allotted to *Albert* and his ſucceſſors to hold by fealtie. In the kings partition ſtande Marieburge, Torouia, Culma, Varnia and Danske: in the Duchie (which yeeldeth 120. thouſand ducats yeerely) the chiefe towne in Regimont: the Germans call it Conningsburgh, and there the Duke keepeth his court.

Gouernment. The gouernment of Polonia repreſenteth rather an Ariſtocracie then a kingdome, becauſe the nobilitie (who haue great authoritie in the diets of the kingdome) chooſe the king, and at their pleaſure limite him his authoritie. They haue neither law nor ſtatute, nor forme of gouernment written, but (by cuſtome from the death of one prince to the election of an other) the ſupreme authoritie reſteth in the Archbiſhop of Geſne, who is preſident of the counſel, appointeth the diets, ruleth the Senate, and proclaimeth the new elected king. Before king *Stephen* erected new Biſhops, Palatines, and Caſtellanes in Liuonia, few other beſides the Archbiſhop of Leopolis, and his 13. Suffragans, 28. Palatines, and thirtie of the chiefeſt Caſtellanes, were preſent at the election of the newe king.

In the time of their diets, theſe men aſſemble in a place neere vnto the Senate houſe, where they chooſe two marſhals,

ſhals, by whome (but with a tribunelike authoritie) they ſignifie vnto the councell what their requeſts are. Not long ſince their authoritie and reputation grew ſo mightie, that they now carie themſelues as heads and gouernors, rather then officers and miniſters of the publike decrees of the eſtates. There was one of the councel, that after the maner of *Clodius*, refuſed his Senators place to become one of theſe officers. When a new king is to be choſen, theſe men do more and more limit his authoritie, not ſuffering it to ſtretch one iot farther then accuſtomed. But although the crowne of Poland be at the diſpoſition of the nobilitie, yet was it neuer heard that they reiected or ouerſlipped the kings ſucceſſor, or transferred the kingdome into any other line more then once, when depoſing *Ladiſlaus* (whom notwithſtanding they afterward reſtored) they elected *Weneſlaus* the Bohemian. Likewiſe, they haue alwaies a regard to the kings daughters, as of *Hedinge*, maried by them to *Iagello*; and in our times of *Anne* giuen in mariage to king *Stephen*. It was no ſmall cauſe of the aduancement of *Sigiſmund* the third, to the crowne of Polonia, that he was the ſonne of *Katherine* ſiſter to *Sigiſmund* the emperor, and of the foreſaid *Anne*: And although the kingly authoritie be electiue, yet after he is choſen, his power is abſolute in manie things, as to call the diets, to appoint the times and place, at his pleaſure, to chooſe laie councellors, and nominate the biſhops, and whom he will haue to be of the priuie councell; he is abſolute diſpoſer of the reuenue of the crowne, and Lord of thoſe which hold of him immediate; but ouer the tenants of the nobilitie he hath no iuriſdiction: he is abſolute eſtabliſher of the decrees of the diets, and ſoueraigne iudge of the nobles in criminall cauſes; it is in his power to reward and aduance whom pleaſeth him; to ſpeake in a word, ſuch as is his valor, dexteritie, and wiſedome, ſuch is his power, authoritie, and gouernment. As the Polanders ſay, the decrees of the king indure but three daies, & they conuerſe with him not as coſins, as in France, but as brethren. And as the king hath abſolute authoritie ouer them, which immediately hold of him, ſo the nobilitie diſpoſe abſolutely of their vaſſals, vpon euery of whom they exerciſe more then kingly authoritie, in man-

ner as vpon ſlaues. In eſtabliſhing their kingdome, they haue done one thing woorthie the noting, which is, that as the Romanes increaſed their name and dominion, by communicating the lawes and honors of Italy, and the citie of Rome to other cities, yea whole prouinces: ſo the kings of Polonia haue enlarged, vnited and ſtrengthned their eſtate, by participating the priuileges of the Poliſh nobilitie to thoſe prouinces, which either they haue conquered by armes or otherwaies purchaſed, gracing the nobles thereof with fauours equall to any beſtowed on the Poliſh nation. By this equallyzing, king *Landiſlaus* ſtrongly vnited Ruſſia and Podalia to Poland: *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, Lituania: *Stephen*, Liuonia: for equalitie in offices & promotions knitteth affections in peace and warre.

Forces. Graine. Coine.

The foorce of this kingdome (as of others) conſiſteth in graine, coine, footemen, horſemen, armour and munition. Of graine we haue ſpoken alreadie. In coine it is not verie rich: for excepting Danske they haue neuer a mart towne woorthie eſtimation; and the wares that are brought from Pruſſia and Liuonia, do not enrich the kingdome with ready money; yea they doe hardly ſuffice to barter with the Engliſh and Flemmiſh for cloth, ſilks and wools: or with the Spaniſh, Portuguize and other merchants, for ſugars, ſpices, fruits and Malueleies. For when the countrie is not giuen to traffike, nor the cities to buy and ſell, nor the people to labour, and the nobility is very gallant, prodigall in expences, ſpending more then their reuenues in diet and apparell, and the ſeaſoning of their meates (for the Polanders vſe more ſpices then any other nation:) and their wine, their ſilke, and the greateſt part of their woolen cloth is brought from forren nations, how can the kingdome be rich in ſiluer? For in tranſporting of rich ware, and returning of little, conſiſteth the wealth of euery dominion; gathering together (by venting home-bred commodities) the coine of forren nations, and keeping it once brought in, from paſſing abroad againe. In this practiſe conſiſteth the wealth of Naples and Millan: for Naples ſendeth to ſea great ſtore of corne, wine, oile, ſilke, woad, horſes, fruits, and ſuch like commodities, which bring in huge maſſes of forren coine: Millan

lan ſupplieth the want of other prouinces with corne, rice, clothes, iron worke, and wares of all ſorts; and returneth little againe. If the kingdome of Naples and Sicill were as well ſtored with artificiall workmanſhip, as they are prouided with corne and wealth, no other kingdome could compare with them.

To returne to Poland: notwithſtanding, their riches are not ſo ſmall as ſome thinke they are; for the reuenues of the crowne raiſed of the mines of ſalt and ſiluer amount yeerelie to ſixe hundred thouſand ducats. True it is that *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* pawned part of his reuenues, and king *Henry* a moneth before his flight (to binde ſome part of the nobilitie faſt vnto him) ſold vnto them more then three hundred thouſand ducats of yeerly rent. It is lawful for the king by ſales of eſcheats falling to the crowne, to purchaſe liuings for himſelfe, and of the ſaide reuenues to retaine great portions to his proper vſe, and ſpare his owne expences: for when the king with his court abideth in Lithuania, the Lithuanians defray the charges: the like is done in moſt places of Poland. He that waieth with himſelfe that the reuenues of Scotland, Nauarre, and Sardinia exceed not yeerely one hundred thouſand duckets, nor the kingdome of Aragon to yeeld aboue one hundred thouſand crownes euery three yeeres; cannot lightly eſteeme of the reuenues of this kingdome: yet the king might raiſe his reuenues to a higher reckoning, if he were leſſe bountifull to his Palatines and Caſtellanes: for moſt commonly he beſtoweth on them two parts, and three parts, yea now and then the whole profites ariſing in their gouernments; but in the time of warre and dangerous occurrences (yet by the decree of the aſſemblies of the kingdome) the king doth lay greeuous impoſitions and taxes on the people, which are either leuied of the prouinces, or of the aſſiſe of bread: and theſe tallages haue amounted to ſuch a reckoning, that therewith king *Stephen* ſuſtained the burden of a moſt heauy three-yeeres warre againſt the great Duke of Moſcouie; yea the gentlemen for the defence of the kingdome, are bound to ſerue at their own charges. Theſe ſerue on horſebacke, ſome armed as our men at armes, ſome lightlier armed, ſome like the Tartars, and thoſe *Riches.*

thoſe they terme Coſſaches or aduenturers, trained vp to ſteale, to depopulate, to waſte, to turne all things vpſide downe. Theſe gentlemen ſerue in the fielde gallantly furniſhed, attired in caſſocks and hoſe ſhining with golde and ſiluer, and a thouſand other colours: they adorne themſelues with plumes and feathers of eagles, with the skinnes of leopardes and beares, and with many banners and partie-coloured enſignes. Theſe and ſuch like furnitures doe cauſe them to be diſcerned of their fellowes, make them ſeeme terrible to their enimies, and encourage their mindes to fiercenes and proweſſe: Their horſe are ſmall, yet nimble, and farre more couragious then the Ducth. It is thought that vpon neceſſitie, Poland is able to raiſe an hundred thouſand horſe, and Lithuania ſeuentie thouſand, but farre inferior in goodneſſe to the Poliſh. They haue ſo great confidence in the great number of their horſe, that nothing fearing the power of any enimies, they regard not the building of fortreſſes but reſolue that they are able to defend their countrey, their wiues and children, their libertie and goods, in the open field againſt any prince whatſoeuer; boaſting that in either chance of warre, they neuer turned their backes to their enimies. *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* labored, that in the diets of the kingdome order might be taken for the fortifying of Cracouia, becauſe of the neighbourhood of the Emperor: but he could neuer effect it, partly becauſe it ſhould not giue their kings opportunity of abſolute authoritie, and tyrannicall emperie, partly becauſe they thinke themſelues by noble courage ſufficiently able to defend the kingdome. They haue no infanterie; for al the people of the kingdome is diuided either into merchants and artificers (which inhabite the cities) or labourers and husbandmen which liue in the countrey, in ſuch ſubiection as we ſpake of before: & this is the reaſon that the gentlemen onely go to the war, and will not in any caſe ſerue on foote; but when occaſion ſerueth, they wage Germaine and Hungarie footemen: and of theſe, king *Stephen* in his iourney into Liuonia, entertained vnder his colours little leſſe then ſixteene thouſand, to conuey their great ordinance: For pioners they vſe the Tartars, and their owne vplandiſh people.

people. The kingdome is ſufficiently ſtored with great ordinance and all furniture belonging thereto, of which it can ſuffer no manner of ſcarcitie: firſt, becauſe the noblemen keepe many in their caſtles; next for the neighbourhood of Germanie, which is rich in mettall to caſt great ordinance; and plentifull of artificers to forge any thing belonging to the vſe of warre. And though it is not vſuall to ſee many caſtles in Polonia, yet the fortreſſes of Leopolis and Camentzie in Ruſſia, the caſtle of Cracouia in the leſſe Poland, Polocenſis in the frontiers of Moſcouia, Marienbourge and ſome other townes in Liuonia, are peeces of no ſmall ſtrength. Theſe forces of Polonia (which we haue ſpoken of) are ſuch in quantitie and qualitie, that few nations in Europe can equall them, none ſurpaſſe them: one thing they want, and that is celerity: for to the ſure ſtrengthning of euery kingdome, fower things are required: that is to ſay, that their force be of their owne ſubiects, that it be populous, valiant, and quick: their owne, becauſe it is dangerous truſting a ſtranger; populous, becauſe of reenforcements after checks or ouerthrowes; valiant, becauſe number without courage little auaileth; yea it bringeth forth tumult and confuſion: quicke, that they may lightly mooue, and ſpeedily be drawen whither neceſſitie enforceth. The laſt of theſe fower vertues the Polacks want, that is, celeritie: which commeth two waies, one by the authoritie of the prince, the other by readie money. The king hath not power to determine any thing; to denounce warre, to impoſe taxes, or to gather treaſure without the conſent of the parliament, and this parliament (where it is neceſſarie that many be preſent) is like an engine made of many peeces, which without long delaies and loſſe of time can neuer readilie be ioyned togither, or mooued forward. For in warlike affaires thoſe princes make beſt ſpeede, which are beſt able to command, and haue moſt money in readines; otherwiſe in appointing and ordering the diets, and deuiſing that the actions may anſwere the counſels; then in executing, and laſtly in prouiding of money there happeneth ſuch loſſe of time, that little is left for the beginning of the iourney, much leſſe for the accompliſhment. Beſides the Barons and nobles are at ſuch charges.

charges in trauailing to the diets, and make such long tarriance when they are there, that at their departure they haue little left wherewith to maintaine the war. It may be that for the defence of the state, quicker and readier resolution would be taken, because of the imminent danger fatal in general. But for the conquest of any forren place, I beleeue they would proceed with like slownes and irresolution, for the hope of good doth not so much moue vs, as the feare of euill: yet hath our age seene (in the raigne of *Sigismund Augustus*) the Moscouite to haue conquered the prouinces of Moloth and Smolock, and that without resistance or reuenge; a cowardize ill beseeming so high a king, and so mighty a state: as likewise he inuaded Liuonia without impeachment, which had shadowed it selfe vnder the wing & protection of the said *Sigismund*. In the daies of *Henry* of Aniow, *Iohn* prince of Moldauia (euen he that with an vndaunted spirit and famous victorie) held war against the Turke, was shamefully forsaken of them, contrary to the couenants of confederacy betweene him and this *Sigismund* concluded. Yet must wee needes confesse that such as is the courage, valour, and reputation of the prince; such is the resolution, alacritie, and forces of the Polacks; of themselues populous, valiant, and couragious. *Stephen Bathor* gaue good testimonie heereof, in whose time Polonia not onely maintained the honor and glory of a kingdome sufficient to defend it selfe from forraine armes, but also to make conquests of great matters, from most potent enimies. And seeing wee haue spoken of celeritie, a vertue most necessarie for euerie state, it shall not be amisse to speake of the causes of this celeritie, which (as is aforesaid) are two: viz. the reputation of the prince, which giueth it life; and store of coine, which preserues it in action: for we haue seene in most mightie armies, the body by the slownes of the head, to haue spent the time most idly, and very famous victories for want of money, to giue continuall motion to the armie, to haue brought forth small or no effects. Besides, the disposition of the soldier is a great helpe heereunto: for no man can truely praise the Germane and Bohemian footemen for celeritie; but this commendation without doubt is proper to the Italian, Spaniard,

and

and Frenchmen, not onely for that they are of better constitution of body, but for that (which in warre is all in all) they are better contented to liue with a little: though they want coine they are not discouraged, neither waxe sicke with fruites, if flesh be wanting; and happen what may, they longer and better can indure hardnes and scarcitie. Their riding light armed is of more execution then armed at all peeces, and their argolitiers more seruiceable then lanciers: for which cause the French also in their late broiles haue giuen ouer their lances, wherein of old did cõsist the glory of their armes, and betaken themselues to the pistoll. But to what aduantage they haue thus done, let another dispute, for I say not, that a light armed man is absolutely to be preferred before a man at armes in chances of warre, but onely affirme, that he is more actiue and more readie: yea the goodnes of the horse is of great consequence. For the Flanders horse farre excelleth the Friesslander an. Germane; the Hungarie horse, the Polonian; the Turkie horse, the Genet: the Barbarie horse is more speedie then any of the rest: Betweene both is the courser of Naples, who though he be not so swift as the Spanish Genet, yet he is better able to indure trauell, and to beare the waight of armour, not becomming ouerflow therewith. To speake truth, experience manifesteth the Germane horse, by reason of their slow pace to worke small effect, either to pursue the fleeing enimie, or swiftly to flie from their executing aduersarie: for if the Wallachian, Hungarian, Polish, Turkish, Moorish, or Barbarie horsemen should breake the Germans, they are not able to flie; and if it happen the German to ouerthrow them, they are as vnable speedily to pursue: for they charge slowly, & retire heuily. So in fights at sea, ships of burden are of small seruice, because if winde want, they can neither be mooued nor turned: the Galleasses are somewhat better, yet performe little more, but the best of all is the galley for his swift sterage. And for proofe hereof, we haue seene the nauy of the Christians consisting of great ships to haue spent the better part of sommer and warlike season in preparations onely, and on the contrarie, the Turkish fleete soone furnished, and speedily put to sea; of such aduantage is spare

diet, and needfull prouiſion to the Turkiſh affaires; and ſo diſcommodious is gluttonie to the proceedings of the Chriſtians: for wine and other delicates onely are as troubleſome to the Chriſtians, as the whole prouiſion for a campe, to the Turkiſh armies. Therefore let no man marueil if they march in all their iourneies excellently well furniſhed with ordinance, ſhot, gunpowder, and all neceſſaries: for at land they haue their carriages laden onely with prouiſion, at ſea their ſhips, and not with wine, pullets, and ſuch needleſſe vanities. At a worde, they goe to the warre to fight, and not to fill their bellies.

The great Duke of Moſcouia.

THe great Duke of Moſcouia is Lord of a moſt large territorie, and within the limits of his iuriſdiction are contained many regions. By the North Ocean his ſcepter ſtretcheth frō the Bay of Granico to the riuer of Ob: by the ſouth, all alongſt the riuer Volga, to the Caſpian ſea: weſtward, it reacheth to the borders of Liuonia, and almoſt to the riuer Boriſtenes, and eaſtward, to Volga. Some write, that it containeth in length three thouſand miles, in bredth 1500. wherein are contained fifteene Dukedomes, ſixteene prouinces, and two kingdomes. They were once ſubiect to the Tartars, whoſe prince *Roydo* in the yeere 1140. conquered all Moſcouie; but *Iohn* the firſt (incouraged by their ciuill diſſentions) denied them tribute. In proceſſe of time, when *Ammetes* the laſt ſucceſſor of *Roydo*, (who died at Vilua) had ouercome the Tartars Precopenſes, the great duke adioyned to his Empire, Permia, Veatia, and Iugria, prouinces ſubiect to *Ammetes*. From this time the forces of the great Duke increaſing, *Baſilius Caſan*, and *Iohn* the ſecond conquered the prouinces of Citrahan, which at this day are called kingdomes. To confeſſe truth, the great Dukes haue mightily enlarged their boundes, and haue taken the great Duchies of Seuerin and Smoloncke, Bielcheſe, Preſcouia, Nouogrod,

Nouogrod, Iaroſlaue, Roſcouia, ſome of them from the Polands, and ſome from other potentates: they poſſeſſed part of Liuonia, and made their armes fearefull to their neighbours. The chiefe citie of the kingdome is Moſco, where the Patriarch reſideth, Roſcouia and Nouogrode are the ſeates of the Archbiſhops: Cortiſa, Reſania, Columna, Suſdelia, Caſan, Vologda, Tuerra, and Smolonck, are Biſhopricks: Pleſcouia, Precouia, Staritia, Sloboda, Ieroſlaue, Volodomer, (from whence the kings ſeat was tranſlated to the citie Moſco, by *Iohn* the ſecond) Moſayco, Saint Nicholas, Sugana, Vſtiud, Cargapolia. The Emperour abideth in the citie Moſco, which taketh his name of the riuer Moſco, riſing fowerſcore and ten miles higher into the countrey. The citie hath beene greater then now it is, and was nine miles compaſſe; but ſince that in the yeere 1570. it was ſacked and burnt by the Tartars Precopie; it containeth not aboue fiue miles. According to *Poſſeuinus* a writer of good iudgement and induſtrie, there are houſed in this citie thirtie thouſand people, beſides oxen and other cattell.

Nouograde hath the name of *Great*, and yet the ſame author alloweth it not aboue twentie thouſand inhabitants; as likewiſe Smolonck and Pleſcouia. This ſeemeth moſt incredible to me, if it be true as ſome write, that Pleſcouia when king *Stephen* of Poland beſieged it, had within it fiftie thouſand footemen, and ſeuen thouſand horſe. Truly this is a great number, and though they were not all Moſcouites, yet this reckoning asketh a great proportion of inhabitants: for if the king thruſt in fiftie ſeuen thouſand fighting men, it muſt needes be that the inhabitants were verie many moe. Some will haue it, that in times paſt the countrey was better repleniſhed with people, and that afterwards it became deſolate for three cauſes: the firſt was the plague (a newe diſeaſe in Moſcouie) which gleaned away many thouſand people: the ſecond the tyrannie of their Emperors, who haue put infinite numbers to death, eſpecially of the nobilitie: the third: the incurſions and robberies of the Tartars Precopie, and Negaians, which neuer ceaſe vexing their bordering neighbours. Theſe Tartars harrie not onely the countrey, but lead

away captiue whole cities, ſelling them to the Turks and other nations. Theſe inrodes haue laid waſte many and far remooued prouinces.

The wiſedome of a prince is not liuelier diſcerned then in his good foreſight, whether his enterpriſes are likely to prooue hurtfull or profitable to his eſtate; and when he ſuffereth not himſelfe to be carried away with the vaine hope of atchieuing ſome conqueſt, which can neither continue to him ſure nor certaine, but rather draweth after it a continuall diſquiet to his owne ſafetie. For that prince that is led with ſuch an ambitious humor to inlarge his eſtate, doth but weaken himſelfe in people and riches, and in mine opinion is like the man that minding to raiſe the wals and roofe of his houſe higher, taketh away the foundation of the building. It is the greateſt glorie well to keepe what we haue got; but thoſe gettings which are made with future loſſe and diminution of our proper ſtrength, are contrarie to that Maxime. And ſeeing theſe acquiſitions are as it were inciſions or graffings, they ought to better, not to impaire the eſtate of our affaires: for as theſe inciſions are vſed to make ſower trees ſweet, or vnfruitful plants fruitfull: So the enterpriſes of princes ought to be ſuch, as bring foorth aſſured honor and profit, otherwiſe they are labours vnprofitable, pulling downe more then they build, and heaping to themſelues more harme then honor, more trouble then ſafety. Of this kinde are thoſe wars, which are waged to conquer kingdomes farre diſtant, hauing nothing neere vnto vs, but are ſo far diſioined, that they aske greater garriſons then reaſon, or our abilities are able to affoord, to defend them. Therefore let the reſolution of euery expedition bee laid on three groundes: firſt, that the quarrell be iuſt; ſecondly, what hope and facilitie of conqueſt; thirdly, what gaine will ariſe of victorie. For war vndertaken without hope of aſſured fruit, is meere madnes: and many great captaines haue enlarged the bounds of their empires, but not increaſed their owne quiet and ſafeties. No prince made longer iournies and greater expences then the Great Duke *Iohn*: he vanquiſhed the kingdome of Caſan to Volga, and Aſtrachan vpon the Caſpian ſea: he ſubdued a great part of Liuonia. But what

honor,

honor, what profit, or what continuance of ſecuritie gained he by theſe victories? What was the end of this warre? In theſe expeditions periſhed infinite numbers of men, in iourneying, in aſſaults, with the ſword, with ſickneſs, with hunger and other extremities. When he had ouercome them, he was forced to maintaine great garriſons, yea to bring thither whole colonies: and beſides, when men were ſo farre from their homes, either buſied in getting other mens goods, or in keeping what they had got, their wiues ſtaied at home like widowes without iſſue, and the inward parts of the realme remained emptie, as a hart void of bloud, wanting his neceſſarie nutriment, whileſt the inhabitants were waſted on the skirtes of the kingdome. And therefore when it was inuaded by king *Stephen* of Poland, theſe far and remote forces were wanting to make reſiſtance, and through this ouerſight he loſt againe Pozouia, and other peeces of good reckoning, yea and inforced to leaue the whole poſſeſſion of Liuonia to the Polander.

To returne to our purpoſe; Moſcouie for the moſt part is couered with woodes and lakes: theſe woodes are the branches of Hercinia, ſpreading it ſelfe through all the North, and perhaps more in this prouince then in anie other. Heere grow the goodlieſt and talleſt trees of the world, through which for their thicknes the brightnes of the ſunne beames can hardly pearce. An vnſpeakable quantitie of Roſin and pitch diſtilleth out of theſe trees, and heere is the neuer-waſting fountaine of waxe and honie. For without any induſtrie of man the Bees themſelues builde their hiues in the barkes and hollowneſſe of trees. Heere is all plentie of cattell and wilde beaſtes, Beares, Martins, beaſtes called in Latine *Zibellini*, and Woolues: whoſe skinnes beare high prices. Of the timber of theſe trees are ſquared all neceſſaries, as well for buildings as all other vſes: the wals of their cities are framed of beames cut fowerſquare, faſtened togither, filling the chinkes and vacant places with earth. Of theſe beames likewiſe they builde platformes of ſuch height and thicknes, that they beare the weight of great Ordinance how maſſie ſoeuer: they are ſubiect to fire, but not eaſily ſhaken with the furie of batterie. Some men maintaine great diſpu-

cation,

tation, whether fortreſſes built of ſtone, chalke or earth be of greateſt validitie. For the laſt theſe be their reaſons: they are ſooner built, with leſſe charge, and make beſt reſiſtance: when a breach is made, they are eaſieſt repaired, and any part thereof (if chance, occaſion or neceſſitie require) lightlier changed. But all theſe reaſons notwithſtanding, in my minde fortreſſes builte of ſtone carrie the credite: for ſeeing there are fower meanes to ruinate a fortreſſe, Ordinance, mining, fire and digging, peraduenture the ſtone wall may auaile as much in reſiſting, as the earthen in receiuing and deadding the bullet; but againſt mining, fire, the ſpade and pickaxe, without compariſon the ſtone worke excelleth: and to raiſe platformes on the inſide of the wall is all you can inuent either defenſiue or praiſe-woorthie to a fortreſſe built of timber and earth.

For waters, Moſcouie is the mother of riuers and lakes, witnes Dunie, Boriſthenes, Volga, Deſna, Onega, Moſcua, Voliſca, and the famous Tanais, the lakes of Ina, vpon which ſtandeth the great Nouograde, Voloppo, and many others. The abundance of theſe waters do make the aire colder then is requiſite for the increaſe of cattell, or growth of plants, and although cold is thought more wholeſome then heate, yet are their cattell of ſmall growth thereby, and many times their fruits come not to ripening, the earth drowned with the waters for the moſt part becommeth light and ſandie, and then either with two great drouth, or too much moiſture, it deſtroieth the fruit. Winter laſteth nine moneths, litle more or leſſe, and yet the ſoile bringeth foorth plenty of graine and feeding for cattle, and by conſequence abundance of cattle tame and wilde. It bringeth foorth apples, nuts, and filberds: other kinds of fruits they ſcarcely know. Of fiſh they raiſe their greateſt gaine, as hauing greateſt abundance of that commoditie; they drie them in the froſt and winde, as in Norwey and other northerly nations, and they lay it vp for ſtore as well in their townes of warre, as for their priuate families. The kingdome is not full of merchants, becauſe by nature the inhabitants are idle, and that prouince cannot abound with merchandiſe, where arts and artificers are not eſtabliſhed. They haue

haue not the vſe of the ſea, becauſe it is not lawfull for a Moſcouite to trauell out of his princes dominions: ſuch, and ſuch ſtore of wares as they haue, as skins, roſin and waxe they barter for cloth and other commodities, which the Armenians bring to Aſtrachan by the Caſpian ſea, and the Engliſh to Saint Nicholas in the bay of Graduicum.

The gouernment of the great Duke is more tyrannicall then of any other prince in the world; for he is abſolute lord and diſpoſer of the bodies and goods of his ſubiects. Therefore *Mahumet* the Viſier was woont to ſaie, that the Moſcouite and the great Turke amongſt all princes of the earth were onely lords of their owne dominions, and in that regard thought the iourney of king *Stephen* of Poland would prooue full of danger and difficultie. To preſerue his maieſtie and reputation he vſeth incredible policie and ſeueritie: firſt, it is not lawfull for any of his ſubiects to depart the Realme vpon paine of death; and therefore no man there dare go to ſea, no not ſpeake to an ambaſſador, or vſe the counſell of a forreine phiſition without licence. He weareth apparell of ineſtimable value, ioyning the ornaments of a biſhop to the maieſtie of a king, by wearing a miter on his head, ſhining with diamonds and moſt rich ſtones: when he weareth it not on his head, he placeth it before his chaire of eſtate, and oftentimes changeth it, in boaſt of his riches: in his left hand he beareth a moſt rich croſier, apparelled in a long garment, not much vnlike to that which the pope weareth when he goeth to maſſe: his fingers are full of gold rings: and the image of Chriſt and his bleſſed mother the virgin, are ouer the chaire wherein he ſitteth. The priuie chamber and great chamber are full of men clothed in cloth of gold downe to the foote. In ceremonies of religion hee vſeth great deuotion and reuerence: at the table as often as a diſh is changed, or he hath a deſire to drinke, hee maketh manie ſignes of the croſſe: hee beareth ſingular regard to faſtes, and in the Church he kiſſeth the grounde with his forehead, euen as others doe: That no man ſhould prooue a better ſcholler then himſelfe, hee ſuffereth no ſchoole but of writing and reading to bee kept: they read nothing but the Euangeliſtes, ſome hiſtorie,

the

the liues of ſaints, a Homilie of *Iohn Chryſoſtome*, or ſome ſuch like, yea they woulde holde him for an heretike, that ſhoulde goe about to profeſſe himſelfe better learned, and aſſure himſelfe, hee ſhall not eſcape puniſhment. Which is the reaſon that their Notaries, nay the Secretaries themſelues commonly can neither write, nor anſwere ambaſſadors of forreine princes no farther then they are taught of the great Duke: when they negotiate, they no ſooner name the great Duke, but all of them riſe vp with great reuerence: the like is done at his table, when he drinketh or carueth to any man, and ſo in a thouſand like caſualties: they are taught euen from their cradles to beleeue and talke of their great Duke as of God: vſing theſe phraſes in their ordinarie talking, *God onely and our great Seignior knoweth this: Our great Lord knoweth all things. All we inioy health and riches, all proceedeth from our great Duke.* For his ſubiects ſeeing ſuch ſtate and magnificence in their prince, and knowing no more then they are taught at home, reuerence and obey him as ſlaues, not as ſubiects, accounting him rather a god then a king. Hee hath not vnder him Lords graced with titles as we haue Dukes, Earles, Barons, &c. but he beſtoweth vpon one a hamlet, vpon another a farme, and theſe not hereditary, vnleſſe he confirme it: and when he hath confirmed it, the farmers notwithſtanding paie him a portion of their fruits, and owe him villaine ſeruice: which is the cauſe that euery man dependeth on the will of the prince, and looke by how much the richer, by ſo much the deeper is he indebted vnto him. To preuent rebellion, he transferreth whole families and townes-ſhips from one prouince to another, and ſendeth the one and the other into garriſons, as into exile: ſo farre away are the miſerable people carried from their owne homes.

By this a man may geſſe of his wealth and riches: for ſeeing he is abſolute Lord of all, he vſeth the ſeruice of their bodies at his pleaſure, and what portion of their goods him liſteth. Of the skins of wild beaſts he challengeth what portion he liketh; and of euery ſort of fiſh, euen what he will. The skins are ſold or giuen, as pleaſeth him: the fiſh dried in the winde is kept for vittailing the garriſons. In the market no man

man may ſell his wares before the king hath ſold. He hath not any mines of gold or ſiluer. The beſt mart townes from whence he gathereth the greateſt part of his reuenues, are Aſtrachan at the Caſpian ſea, whither the wares of the Perſians and Armenians are brought; and Saint Nicholas, whither the ſhips of the Engliſh and Hollanders doe arriue laden with cloth and other merchandize, which from thence are tranſported to Vologda. When his ambaſſadors returne, he taketh from them the preſents giuen them by forrein princes, and inſteed thereof beſtoweth vpon them ſome other reward, and many times nothing at all. To ſpeake in a word: he gleaneth whatſoeuer is good or ought woorth through his whole kingdome: it is thought that he hath great ſtore of treaſure in his caſtles of Moſco, Ieroſlane, and the mariſhes of Albi, which may be true: for the great Duke *Iohn* waſted in a manner all Liuonia, ſparing neither relique, chalice, crucifixe, nor any ornament of ſiluer: and of that which is once brought in, he ſuffereth no part thereof to be tranſported out of his dominions, vnleſſe it be for the ranſome of ſoldiers taken in the warre, or of other poore people carried into captiuitie. This is moſt true, that when he loſt Liuonia, which king *Stephen* of Poland reconquered in the yeere of our Lord 1582. he loſt the richeſt prouince of his dominions for the traffike of the Baltike ſea, and the beſt, for the ſtrength of 34. caſtles ſtanding therein.

The ſtrength of the kingdome conſiſteth in the manifold numbers of riuers and mariſhes, and in the thicknes of woods. Beſides, they vſe to lay waſte the parts neereſt their enimies, that there the woods may grow thicker, which for the moiſture of the ſoile quickly commeth to paſſe, and are as auailable as a wal or trench to the defence of the next townes. This policy brought great trauel to the Polanders, for they were conſtrained to looſe much time in cutting down the woods before they could come to the inhabited places of their enimies. They haue a few fortreſſes, ſome built of ſtone, ſome of bricke after the Italian faſhion, but without ſtrength of moderne diuiſes or cunning workmanſhip. Such are the caſtles of Moſco, Nouograd, Pleſcouia, Porcouia, Sloboda: ſome are wrought

with twigs and earth well troden downe, as Smolonck. But commonly the wals of ſtrong places are built of great beames ſtuffed with turffe or moſſe, leauing loop-holes for their ſhot. This fortifying is very auailable againſt great ordinance, but exceeding ſubiect to firing. They ſerue in the field (as we told you before treating of his gouernment) rather bearing themſelues valiantly for feare of puniſhment, then of their own natures ſhewing alacrity or willingnes to the ſeruice. He hath his captaines at a becke; his ſoldiers ſuffer all extremities patiently; they care not for froſt or raine; they indure hunger and ſcarcity with incredible contentment; they liue with a little; better able to defend a fortreſſe, then fight in field: for here courage and agilitie; there conſtancie and reſolution are moſt ſeruiceable, whereas the Polāders are better to fight in the field, then to keepe a caſtle. And therefore the *Great Duke Iohn* finding by experience the vnaptnes of his ſoldiers, and the readines of the Polonians in skirmiſhes and aſſaults, was wont to ſay, that his men had need of a ſpur to driue them forward, and the Polonians wanted a bridle to hold them back. His chiefeſt force is in his horſe, but what number he can raiſe, who can ſhew? For I doe not beleeue that he is able (as ſome ſay) to arme three hundred thouſand, becauſe though his Empire be large, yet for the greateſt part it lieth vnmanured, as the many-daies iourney betweene Cazan and Aſtrachan, and ſcarce meeting with one village in the way, may wel witnes. In the war which king *Stephen* waged againſt him (being not aboue 60. thouſand foote and horſe ſtrong) he was not able to raiſe ſo great a force, I will not ſay, to meete him in the open fielde, yea, not to hinder him from the forcing of Pozouia, Vilocoluc, and other pieces, no, not to diuert him from the ſiege of Pleſcouia. In the yeere 1570. the prince of the Tartars with fowerſcore thouſand ſoldiers pierced euen to the bowels of his kingdome, and ſet fire on his imperiall ſeate Moſco. Therefore I thinke that they that report, that the Great Duke can leuie three hundred thouſand men, and the king of Polonia two hundred, doe rather meane heads of horſes then riders: for there may be ſo many thouſand horſe, and yet euerie one is not to be accounted a horſe of ſeruice, no more

more then euerie horſeman a rider, or able to finde himſelfe armour. One hath his hart in his hoſe; another wants abilitie; a third wants ſtrength of bodie; a fourth both courage and ſtrength; yea admitte he coulde raiſe ſo many horſe and men, as theſe writers ſpeake of, yet would it be a hard matter, perchance impoſſible, for him to aſſemble them in one place; or if he could, where woulde wages, or victuals bee found ſufficient to ſuſtaine them. For two hundred horſemen in Moſcouie, require three hundred packhorſes, and ſo many tenders, who muſt all be fedde; as likewiſe the victulers, the merchants, the artificers, and ſuch ſeruants as can hardly be ſpared in warlike enterpriſes: to performe this, whole Moſcouie muſt of neceſſity be gathered into one place, and then it were to be feared, leaſt in ſo great a iourney from one part of the kingdome, the other part oppoſite would run to ruine and decaie. Likewiſe although ſuch a proportion of horſe, as hath beene ſpoken of, might be raiſed: it were not wiſedome for the ſtate to ſtrip the borders of their garriſons; the prouinces of their ſinewes; the cities of their magiſtrates; and the countrey of husbandmen. Therefore I conclude, that prince whoſe kingdome is able to affoord him 150. thouſand horſe, to be brauely furniſhed, if hee can bring into the fielde but the third part: I ſpeake of warre and not of incurſions.

Some more modeſt in writing affirme, that the Moſcouite could leuie 150. thouſand horſe, if neceſſitie to defend himſelfe, ſhould conſtraine him thereto, and that *Iohn* the third in the voyage of Aſtracan entertained 120. thouſand horſe, and twentie thouſand foote. The ſame king inuading Liuonia in the time of king *Alexander*, leuied a mightie armie, and notwithſtanding maintained another vpon the borders of the kingdome. The Great Duke *Iohn* adioyned to his troupes of horſe certaine thouſand of ſhotte, moſt ſtrangers, which yeelded him notable ſeruice in the defence of his cities. Euery ſecond or third yeere hee renueth his ſouldiery throughout the prouinces, and keepeth a regiſter of the ſons of noblemen, and the number of his ſeruants and horſes. The wealthier horſemen vſe a curaſſe of braſſe, a helmet light and thinne; bucklers brought out of Perſia, and lances: others are

armed with Iacks quilted with bombaſt to reſiſt arrowes. Theſe handle the bow, and many of them the harquebuſe, all the ſword and dagger. The Germans ſerue them in the field, and the Italians in their fortifications.

Borderers. Vpon his frontiers lie the Tartars *Precopenſes*, the *Taurici*, the *Cherſoneſi*, the *Circaſſi*, and the *Negayans*. Theſe people inhabite a countrey ſeuen daies iourney diſtant, and are gouerned by Dukes after the maner of the Heluetians. He hath receiued great iniurie of the *Precopenſes* without hope of amends, becauſe they are confederate with the great Turke: and by him furniſhed with Harquebuſiers and Ordinance; & haue in their kingdome many ſtrong places fortified with Turkiſh garriſons; and therefore hee thinketh it hard and dangerous to inuade them, being backed by the Turke, whoſe power he ſhoulde ſtirre vp likewiſe againſt him. It is the cuſtome of the *Precopi* often vſed, to make inrodes into the prouinces of the Great Duke, as likewiſe of the Polonian: and to carrie away whatſoeuer cometh to hand. If the Great Duke haue vanquiſhed the Tartars of Caſſan and Aſtracan, let him attribute that conqueſt to his great Ordinance, which they wanted. This Duke led againſt the Caſſani, an engine deuiſed on this faſhion: he faſtened to the ſides of chariots a broad and large planke, bored full of holes, and fitted for the ſhooting of harquebuſiers and musketers; with the which they did greeuouſly wound the enimies, and could not be hurt againe by the arrowes of their aduerſaries. By theſe helpes it was no maſterie to vanquiſh and ſubdue them. But the *Precopi* haue the vſe of guns, and (woorth all the reſt) the fauour and protection of the Turkiſh Emperor, who thirſting to open a way into Moſcouie, or the Caſpian ſea, aſſaied not many yeeres ſince to dig a trench from Tanais to Volga: but his forces were put to flight by the Moſcouites with the aide of the Tartars, who feared their vtter deſtruction if the Turke had brought that deſignement to paſſe. This was a deuiſe of greater courage then wiſedome: for the Moſcouites not onely defeated his nauie, taking part thereof, but put his land-forces to the ſword, conſiſting of foureſcore thouſand Tartars, fiue and twentie thouſand Turkes, and amongſt them

them three thouſand Ianizars. As we ſaid before, the Circaſſi liue after the manner of the Swiſſers, they endeuour not to enlarge their owne bounds, but ſerue for wages, ſometime the Turke, ſometime the Perſian, and ſometime the Moſcouite, from whoſe dominion they are ſo far diſioyned, that they ſtand in no feare of their ſeuerall mightines. The Tartars Negayans are more to be dreaded for their ſudden inrodes, and furious incurſions, then for ielouſie of their forces, or that they are able to raiſe, or vndertake any voyage royall. Of late times they threatned the Moſcouite, but their furie was appeaſed by ſending them preſents. It is the beſt courſe to hazard our money, rather then our forces againſt the thefts and ſpoiles of theſe barbarous nations: for when they haue neither city nor ſtrong place to ſubdue, to keepe them in ſubiection: what can you terme the warre made againſt them, but a labour with loſſe, a charge without profit? The great Duke is conſtrained to keep great troupes of horſe in Citrachan, Caſan, and Viatca, againſt theſe Nagaij: as likewiſe a great garriſon in Culagan vpon Tanais againſt the Precopi. The next bordering neighbour by Finland ſide is the king of Sweueland. Of late times this king holding a long war againſt him, tooke from him by force the caſtles of Soreneſco, and Pernauia the great and the leſſe in Liuonia on the one ſide, whileſt king *Stephen* cruelly vexed him with warre on the other. In the vtmoſt boundes of the Finland Bay, the Sweuian to his great charges poſſeſſeth the fortreſſe of Viburge, maintaining therein a great garriſon to reſiſt the attempts of the Ruſſie, and the great Duke. Likewiſe in that ſea & the coaſt adioyning, he maintaineth ſhips of war, as well to be readie at all aſſaies againſt the approches of this great Duke; as likewiſe to forbid the Eaſterlings the bringing of any munition or warlike furniture into any part of his dominions: neither doth he ſuffer other ſhips to ſaile in thoſe ſeas, without a ſpeciall placard ſigned with his owne hand. By the benefit of this nauie and ſea force, the king of Sweueland (whereſoeuer he findeth meanes to vſe it) becommeth maſter of the field, and by vertue thereof ſeazeth vpon many places on the coaſt of Liuonia, and the bordering territories: but where the Dukes horſe & his great numbers of footemen may ſtand *Sweueland.*

ſtand him in ſteede, as in the open field or places remooued from the ſea, there he maketh his part good enough, and moſt commonly putteth the Sweuian to the woorſt. The beſt is, nature hath placed betweene them ſuch rough mountains, ſuch cold, ſuch yce, and ſuch ſnowes, that they cannot greatly endammage one another.

Poland. The laſt neighbour is the king of Poland, betweene whom and the great Duke this is the difference: the Moſcouite hath more territories; the Polonian better inhabited and more ciuill: the Moſcouite more ſubiects, and more ſubiect; the Polonian better ſoldiers and more couragious: the Moſcouites are apter to beare the ſhocke then to giue a charge; the Polonians to charge: the Moſcouite is fitter to keepe a fortreſſe: the Polonian to fight in the open field: the Moſcouite forces are better vnited; the Polonian more conſiderate and better aduiſed: the Moſcouite leſſe careth for want and extremities; the Polonian death and the ſword: yea either nation is of greater woorth, when either of their princes is of greateſt valour and magnanimitie; as it happened, when *Baſilius* conquered the great Duchie of Smoloncke and Poloncke, & the large circuite of Liuonia; And againe, when *Stephen* king of Poland in his laſt warre againſt *Iohn* (*Baſilius* ſonne) reconquered Polonck, with diuers other places of good reckoning, beſieged the citie of Plesko, and forced the Moſcouite to leaue all Liuonia: whereby I conclude: ſuch as is the valour and wiſedome of either prince, ſuch is the force and courage of their people.

The Great Cham.

AS our Anceſtors were ignorant of the regions ſcituated vpon the eaſt ſide of the Caſpian ſea, which they imagined to be a branch of the Ocean: Euen ſo as yet little or nothing knoweth his age, what regions lie, or what people inhabite beyond that ſea, and the mountaines, commonly called Dalanguer and Vflont. *Marke Paule*

Paule Venetus was the firſt that broke the ice in deſcribing of thoſe countries, and of him haue we receiued what we know of the Tartars. The great diſtance of countries, the difficultie of the iourney, and the inacceſſible ſcituation of places, hath hindered the diſcouerie of thoſe prouinces: and the great Duke of Moſcouie (by whoſe dominions we may eaſieſt trauell thither) will ſuffer no ſtranger to paſſe thorough his kingdome. The Caſpian ſea, a paſſage no leſſe fitting for the iourney, is not frequented: and by the way of Perſia infinite mountaines and vaſt deſerts, diuiding both prouinces, oppoſe thēſelues againſt vs. And to the further hinderance of this diſcouerie, neither the great Cham, neither the king of China, nor the Duke of Moſcouie will ſuffer anie of their ſubiects to trauell out of their dominions, nor any ſtranger to enter in, vnleſſe he come as an ambaſſador; neither (in this caſe) is it lawfull for him to conuerſe freely or range at his pleaſure.

They liue vnder diuers princes, the principall whereof are thoſe that weare greene on their turbants. Theſe inhabite Shamarcand, and are at continuall enmitie with the Perſians. Next are thoſe of Bochan, Mahumetans: then thoſe of Mogor, of whom you ſhall heare heereafter; and laſtly thoſe of Cathay, whereof we now intreat.

Neuer was there any nation vpon the face of the earth, that enioyed a larger Emperie then they do, or haue vndertaken haughtier exploites: and I would that they had had ſome, who might haue recommended by writing their doings to the world.

M. Paule Venetus writeth, that this people once inhabited Ciurga & Barge, prouinces ſcituated vpon the Scythick Ocean, without citie, caſtle or houſe, wandering like the Arabians from place to place, according to the ſeaſon of the yeere. They acknowledged *Vncham* (whom ſome interprete *Preſter Iohn*) for their ſoueraigne Lord, to whō they gaue the tenth of their cattell. In proceſſe of time they multiplied to ſuch numbers, that *Vncham* being iealous of their neighbourhood, began to leſſen their number and forces, by ſending them, now hither, now thither, vpon moſt long and deſperate voiages,

as

as occasion offered. Which when they perceiued, they assembled themselues, resoluing to leaue their naturall soile, and to remooue so far from the borders of *Vnchan*, that neuer after he should haue cause to suspect their numbers: this they performed. After certaine yeeres they elected amongst them a king, called *Changis*, to whom for the greatnes of his glorie and victories, they added the sirname of *Great*. This *Changis*, departing from his owne territories in the yeere of our Lord 1162. with a most fearefull armie, subdued partly by force, partly by the terror of his name, nine prouinces. At last, being denied the daughter of *Vnchan* in mariage, he made warre vpon him, and ouercomming him in battell, cast him out of his kingdome. After the death of *Changis*, his successors afflicted Europe: In the yeere 1212. they droue the Polosochi from the banks of the Euxine sea. In the yeere 1228. they inuaded and spoiled Russia. In the yeere 1241. they raised Kiouia the chiefe citie of the Rutheni, and *Battu* their captaine wasted Polonia, Silesia, Morauia, and Hungary. *Innocent* the fourth amazed with the tempest of these inuasions, in the yeere 1242. sent certaine friers of the orders of *Dominicke* and *Francis*, to the court of the great Cham, to intreate a peace for Christendome.

Cirmit. The circuit of this Empire in the times aboue spoken of, stretched from the vtmost bounds of Asia to Armenia, and from Bengala to Volga, yea their incursions pierced euen to Nilus and Danubius. The Macedonian and Roman Empires were neuer so large. But bicause they were rather runnagates then men of warre, wanting politike gouernment and militarie discipline, sometime ruling one prouince, sometime another, they rather wrought spoile and terror to the conquered nations, then feare of bondage or subiection, and at last seated themselues beyond the mountaine Caucasus. After, it became diuided into manie principalities, yet so that the title and maiestie of the Empire, remained alwaies to the great Cham, who (as we said before) tooke the originall of this name from the great *Changis*. At this day, this Empire reacheth from the desert Lop on the one side, and the lake Kitauia on the other, to that famous wall of China scituate betweene 43. and 45. degrees,

degrees, which leadeth from mountaine to mountaine, till it end at the Ocean, and diuideth the Tartars from the Chinois: and from the Scythian Ocean, to the confines of Tipura and the bordering regions.

In the foresaid compasse are contained many and mightie kingdomes, and many puissant prouinces, as Tangut, wherein are the cities Succuir and Campian, built after the manner of Italie, Ergimul, Carazan, Tebet and Caindu, the chiefe cities of prouinces. In the middest of the Empire is Tenduch, which in the time of *Paule Venetus* was in the iurisdiction of *Pressler Iohn*, but now subdued by the great Cham. The greater part of the people were Christians, but Nestorians, the rest Mahumetans. Heere is the citie Cambalu the imperiall seat, containing in compasse eight and twentie miles, and neere vnto it Taiduc scituated vpon a lake, and containing in compasse fower and twentie miles. Then Xaindu the palace of the great Cham, being fower-square; euery square containing eight miles, and fower gates. Within that square, is another pallace, sixe miles square; in the middest whereof are three gates towards the south, and as many towards the north; from whence, as likewise from euery corner you may behold the imperiall pallace. And within this circuit is yet an other square of one mile, hauing sixe gates like the former. Betweene euery wall you may see meadowes and woods, and within this square is the imperiall pallace, of whose pleasures, riches and magnificence, neither of his chases fowlings and fishing am I able to write. This whole region for the most part is very populous, full of townes, rich and ciuill, which you may the rather beleeue; first, for that the Tartars choosing this for their seate and country, beautified it with the spoiles of Asia, China, and that part of Europe which they harried, and were neuer woone or taken from thence againe to this day: next, for that the prouinces are most commodiously scituated for traffike and negotiation, partly by reason of their admirable plaines and huge lakes, amongst which are Cazaia (whose waters are salt) Guian, Dangu, Xandu, & Catacora: partly by reason of their large riuers, which with a long course do runne by the prouinces of Curato, Polisango, Zaiton, and Mecon. *Paule*

Venetus calleth it Quion. A great helpe hereunto likewiſe is the varietie of fruites, and the aboundance of graine, rice, wooll, ſilke, hempe, Reubarbe, muske, and excellent fine chamblets wouen of camels haire. *Paule* writeth, that it affoordeth ginger, cinnomom, and cloues, which for my part I hardly beleeue. In manie riuers are found graines of gold. Their coine is not all of one value. In Cathaia a coine is currant made of the blacke rinde of a certaine tree growing betweene the bodie and the barke. This rinde being ſmoothed, rounded and tempered with a gummie ſubſtance, is ſtamped with the image of the great Cham. In the kingdomes of Caiacan and Carazan, certaine ſea ſhels are currant, which ſome men terme Porcelline. This kinde of money is frequent in manie places of India and Æthiop. By this meanes the princes get vnto themſelues all the golde and ſiluer of the prouinces, which they cauſe to be molten and laide vp in moſt ſafe places, without euer taking anie thing from thence againe. In like ſorte *Prester Iohn* is thought to be Lord of an ineſtimable treaſure, while hee maketh graines of ſalt and pepper to paſſe for currant coine amongſt his ſubiects. They brew an excellent beuerage of rice and ſpices, which ſooner procureth drunkenneſſe then wine. As the Arabians, ſo they, delight in ſower milke, or Coſmus, a kinde of charmed-ſower-mares milke very foricble to turne the braine.

Forces. His force conſiſteth firſt (as we told you) in ſcituation, in ſpacious territorie, in magnificent cities, in plentie of prouiſion, & in rich reuenues: for amongſt many other things he taketh the tenths of wooll, ſilke, hempe, graine, cattell, and is abſolute Lord of all: but the chiefeſt ſinewes of his ſtate conſiſteth in his armed troupes which he keepeth in coutinuall pay and action. Theſe liue alway in the field, foure or fiue miles remote from the cities. Ouer and aboue their ſalary, they are allowed to make profit of their cattell, milke & wool. When he goeth to warfare, according to the cuſtome of the Romanes, he muſtereth part of that ſoldierie which lieth diſperſed through the prouinces. For the moſt part all the nations of the Tartars except the Varcheni, who are not ſubiect to the great Cham,

fight

fight on horſebacke. Their weapons are the bow and arrow, which they vſe as deſperately in their flight, as in the charge. They are verie ſwift; their tents are made of wouen wooll, with which they ſhelter themſelues from foule weather. Their chiefeſt ſuſtenance is milke dried in the ſunne after the butter is queaſed out, yea the blood of their horſes, if famine enforce. They fight not pel-mel with their enimies, but ſomtime on the front, ſometime on the flanke, after the Parthian maner they ouerwhelme them, as it were with a ſhowre of arrowes. Whoſoeuer carrieth himſelfe valiantly, ſtands aſſured of reward, and are graced with honor, immunities and gifts. Twelue thouſand horſemen are appointed for the guard of the Prince, and it is ſaid that of this kinde of force, he is able to leuie a greater power then any other potentate. Howſoeuer it be, two things in his kingdome are woorthie conſideration: the one is, numbers which may be imagined by the ſpaciouſnes of his dominions: the other, their diſcipline, becauſe he keepeth them in continuall pay. For as, diſcipline rather then furie, is to be wiſhed in a ſoldier; ſo in armies, a few trained and experienced ſoldiers, are more woorth then many ſtrong, huge of ſtature and raw. The one may well be compared to eagles, lions and tygres, which obtaine principalitie amongſt other beaſts; not becauſe they exceed them in hugenes of bodies, (for then ſhould they be a pray to the Elephant, horſe, and bufall;) but becauſe they excell them in ſwiftnes and nimblenes ioyned to the ſtrength of their bodies.

Beſide theſe things which *Marke Paul* writeth, certaine Engliſhmen ſayling by the Moſcouite ſea, and the bordering regions haue pierced euen to Cathaia, and haue ſet downe many memorable matters of this Prince, whom the Moſcouite termeth the *Ceſar* of Cathay, and the Turke Vlucham, that is, the Great Prince. And not without reaſon, for in magnificence of courts, amplenes of dominion, abundance of treaſure, and number of ſoldiers, he goeth far beyond all the kings and porentates of Aſia, and raigneth in ſuch maieſtie, that his ſubiects fooliſhly call him the ſhadow of ſpirits, and the ſonne of the immortall God. His word onely is a law, wherein conſiſteth life and death. He maintaineth iuſtice with admirable ſe-

uerrie, except for the first fault: for which the offender is grieuously whipped: for euerie other fault, he is cut in pieces by the middle: herein it should seeme they immitate the opinion of the Stoikes, concerning the equalitie of offences. A theefe is likewise slaine, if he be not able to repay ninefold, as well for a farthing as a pound. The first begotten sonne is heire to the crowne, and installed with these ceremonies. The chiefe of their seuen tribes clothed in white (which is their mourning colour, as likewise of the Iapans) cause the prince to sit vpon a blacke woollen cloth spred vpon the ground, willing him to behold the sunne, and to feare the immortall God; which if he doth performe, he shall finde a more plentifull reward in heauen then in earth; if not, that piece of blacke cloth shall scarcely be left him, whereupon to rest his wearied bodie in the fielde, besides a thousand other miseries that shall continually attend him. Then set they the crowne vpon his head, and the great Lords kisse his feete, sweare fealtie, and honour him with most rich giftes. Then is his name written in golden letters, and laid vp in the temples of the metropolitan citie. He hath two councels, the one for warre, wherein twelue wise men consult: the other of state matters, consisting likewise of as many counsellers. These manage all things belonging to ciuill gouernment, rewarding the good, and punishing the euill, taking especiall care to see those preferred, who haue done anie good seruice, either in warre or peace, to his countrie and Emperor, and others seuerely punished, who haue borne themselues carelesly and cowardly in the charges committed to their discretion. In these two points, (that is, in rewarding and punishing) consisteth so high a policie of good gouernment, that it may well be said, the greatest part of the barbarous princes by these two vertues onely, imprint so maiesticall a reuerence in the harts of their barbarous subiects.

For what other face of good gouernment see you in the Turke, Persian, Mogor or Iariffe? whom reward they but captaines and soldiers? where vse they liberalitie, but in the field amongst weapons? Surely they built the foundation of their state vpon no other ground-worke, nor hope for peace and quietnes,

quietnes, but by victorie and ſtrong hand: yea they haue no meane, in diſgracing baſe mindes and cowards, and in honoring high ſpirits and valiant ſoldiers. Neuer was there common wealth or kingdome, that more deuiſed to honour and inrich the ſoldier, then theſe Barbarians, and the Turke more then all the reſt. The Tartars, Arabians, and Perſians, honour nobilitie in ſome good meaſure; but the Turke rooteth out the families of noble men, and eſteemeth no man vnleſſe he be a ſoldier, committing the fortunes of the whole Empire to the direction of ſlaues and baſe borne, but with an eſpeciall conſideration of their fitnes and ſufficiencie. Let vs returne to the Tartar, and his forme of gouernment. Aſtrologians are in great requeſt in thoſe prouinces; for *M. Paul* writeth, that in the citie of Cambula are fiftie thouſand: and when *Cublay Cham* vnderſtood by them that that citie would rebell againſt him, he cauſed another to be built neere vnto it, called Taindu, containing fower and twentie miles beſides the ſuburbs. There are alſo great ſtore of fortune-tellers and nigromancers in the kings palace of Xandu, as alſo in China they are in high eſteeme. *Iſmael* king of Perſia enterpriſed few matters without their counſell, and it is no woonder that it carrieth ſuch reputation in thoſe places: for betweene the Chaldeans and Aſſirians it tooke the firſt originall in thoſe countries. The Turkes cannot abide it. The Romane Emperors did more then once baniſh it, and the profeſſors thereof, out of their gouernments. I woulde to God the like might bee done amongſt vs Chriſtians, for it is nothing elſe but a branch of Paganiſme. To end with the nature of this people, in outward ſhape they are vnlike to al other people; for they are broader betweene the eies, and bals of their cheeks then men of other nations be: they are of meane ſtature, hauing flat and ſmall noſes, little eies, broad faces, and eie-lids ſtanding ſtreight vpright, ſwartie of complexion, ſtrong of conſtitution, patient of extremities, excellent horſemen, and verie good archers. And as part of the Arabians inhabite cities, and are called Moores, part liue in the fields and mountaines, and are termed Baduini: ſo ſome of theſe Tartars dwell in cities, as the Cathaians, Bochars, and thoſe of Shamarcand: others wander through the

the plaines, and are diuided into hords, and they are fiue in number, Zauolenhſes, Coſſanenſes, Præcopits, Nagaians and Koſſacks.

The Great Mogor.

IT hath beene alwaies beleeued, that the territorie lying betweene Ganges and the riuer Indus, hath euermore beene ſubiect & great & mighty Monarchs. For (to be ſilent in matters of more ancient memorie) about the yeere of our Lord 1300. there raigned in the kingdome of Delos an Arabian prince of the ſect of *Mahumet*, named *Sanoſaradin* (as *Iohn Barros* reporteth) of ſo great power and ſtrength, that he enterpriſed the conqueſt of Aſia. Vpon which reſolution forſaking thoſe regions, in which Indus and Ganges take their beginnings, with a huge and mightie armie, by little and little hee ſubdued thoſe Princes and people which did oppoſe againſt him, vntill he pierced to the bounds of Canora, where it beginneth at the riuer Bate aboue Chaul, and ſtretcheth betweene Bate and the gulfe of Bengala to Cape Comerine. When hee had woone ſo large and famous a territorie, reſoluing to returne into Delos, hee left *Abdeſſa* his lieutenant in Canora. This man incouraged by the victories of his maſter, and preſuming vpon his owne good fortune, bereaued the Gentiles of the greater part of Canora: and hauing gathered a moſt mightie and populous armie compacted of Gentiles, Mahumetans and Chriſtians, after hee had raigned twentie yeeres, he died in the height of his proſperitie, leauing his ſon *Mamudza* behind him; whom the king graced with his fathers regencie, vpon condition to pay him a yeerely tribute: which payment the yoong man neither regarded, nor ſhewed himſelfe loyall to his ſoueraigne in manie things beſides. It happened that *Sanoſaradin* dying in the warre which he made againſt Perſia, left behind him a ſonne of ſuch puſillanimitie and ſo baſe a ſpirit, that *Mamudza* hereupon tooke courage

courage to intitle himselfe king of Canora, calling the countrey Decan, and the people Decaini, that is, illegitimate. After this, he erected eighteene captainships, and diuided his dominion amongst them, assigning to euery one his limites, onely with this penalty, to find alwaies in readines a certaine number of footemen and horsemen.

To preuent future rebellion he did choose these Captaines, not out of the orders of his nobilitie, but from the number of his slaues. Nay more then this (to be assured of their loyalty) he commanded that euerie one of them, should build him a house in his royall citie Bider, in which their children should remaine: and that once euery yeere at least, they should make their appearance in his court.

But because all authoritie, which is not as well vnderpropped with his proper vertues, as grounded vpon the affections of the people, is of small continuance; so happened it to this Prince: for his slaues and vassals hauing soueraigne authoritie put into their hands, made no more account of him then of a cipher, stripping him poore Prince without respect or reuerence of all his dominions, sauing his chiefe citie Bider, with the territorie adioyning. For euerie one of a Lieutenant, became an vsurper of those states which were committed to his trust; the mightier alwaies oppressing the weaker: so that all in the ende became a pray to a few. Two of them are famous at this day: the one of them stretching his dominion to the borders of Cambaia; the other to the skirts of Narsinga: the first called by the portugals Nissamalucco, the other Idalcan: either of them being so puissant, that in the yeere 1571. Idalcan belegred Goa with an armie of thirtie fiue thousand horse, threescore thousand elephants and two hundred and fifty pieces of ordinance. Nissamalucco besieged Chaul with lesse forces, but better fortune: for though he did not force it, yet he brought it to a hard pinch, with the slaughter of twelue thousand Moores.

In those countries in which *Sanasoradin* began his Empire, not aboue 70. yeeres agone, a great prince (whom the east people call the great Mogor (in the same sense as we call the great Turke) laid the foundation of a mightie empire; for as the

the king of Biarma in our times greatly hazarded the ſtates of Pegu and Siam, and the bordering regions; euen ſo the Mogor turned topſie turuie the kingdomes lying on this ſide the riuer Ganges. The receiued opinion is, that they tooke their originall from Tartaria, and that they came from that coaſt, where the ancient Meſſagetæ (a people accounted inuincible in armes) did once inhabite, and liuing as it were lawleſſe, and vnder no gouernment, by inuading of their neighbours, procured vnto themſelues the ſoueraigntie of moſt ſpacious kingdomes. By the riuer Oxus they border vpon the Perſians, and are at continuall enmitie with them, ſometimes for religion, and ſometime for inlargement of the boundes of their Empire. Their chiefe citie is Shamarcand, from whence came *Tamarlan*, and of whoſe bloude theſe Mogor princes doe boaſt that they are deſcended. The predeceſſor of him (who is nowe prince of the Mogors) was verie famous in the Eaſt; for in the yeere 1536. being ſollicited by king *Mandao* of the north (from whom *Baburius* king of Cambaia had taken his kingdome) to aide him againſt Cambaian, hee is reported to haue brought with him an infinite number of ſoldiers, which wee may coniecture out of that which *Maffeus* writeth of the armie of the ſaid king *Baburius*: to witte, that this king had vnder his ſtandard one hundred and fiftie thouſand horſe, whereof fiue and thirtie thouſand were barbed: the number of footemen was 500. thouſand. Amongſt theſe were fifteene thouſand forreine ſoldiers, and fower-ſcore Chriſtians, French and Portugals: at which, by what meanes, or by what way, they ſhoulde come thither, I do not a little woonder. Their Galleon (which they called Dobriga) ſuffered ſhipwracke in the chanell of Gambaia.

I know, that if theſe preparations and prouiſions for war, bee compared with our forces of Chriſtendome, they will hardly be taken for true: but wee haue alreadie declared the cauſes, why the princes of the eaſt and ſouth may gather greater armies then wee can, and conſequently that thoſe things which are ſpoken of their incredible ſtore, and woonderfull prouiſion of furniture, may bee anſwerable to their

leuies

leuies and proportions. And as they are able to leuie millions of men (for arming and feeding them they take no great care;) so likewise doe the prouinces affoord great plentie of prouision, and an inestimable multitude of warlike engines: for they carry nothing with them saue that which is necessarie and needfull for the warres: Wines, cates & such like, which cannot but with great expence, labour and trouble, be carried along with armies, are by these men wholy omitted and vtterly reiected. Al their thoughts tend to warlike prouisions, as to get brasse, iron, steele, and tinne, to forge peeces, and cast great ordinance; iron and lead to make bullets; iron and steele to temper cymitars; oxen and elephants to drawe their artillerie; graine to nourish their bodies; mettals to arme them, and treasure to conserue them.

Gouernment.

They are all tyrants, and to preserue their estate, and induce submissiue awednes, they hold hard hands ouer the cōminaltie, committing all gouernment into the hands of soldiers. And to make these men faithfull and loyall, they ordaine them lords of all things, committing vnto their trust, townes, castles, & expeditions of great waight: but the expectation of the prince is often deceiued by the rebellion of these vassals, for sometimes they vsurpe whole prouinces, and impose vpon the people all kinde of iniuries. But let good princes thinke it as necessarie to build their safety vpon the loue of their subiects, as vpon the force of the soldier. Feare admitteth no securitie, much lesse perpetuitie: and therefore these tyrants expecting no surety at the hands of their subiects, trust wholy vpon their men of warre, flattering them with promise of libertie, and bestowing vpon them the goods of their subiects, as rewardes of their seruice. So with vs, the Turke strengtheneth his estate with Ianizars, and as he coueteth to be beloued and fauoured of them (to that end bestowing vpon them the riches and honors of the empire) so they againe acknowledge no other lord and master, I may very well say, father and protector. And so many of the Malaber princes vsing and accounting the people but as beasts, lay all their hopes and fortunes on the Nairs: the kings of Ormus, Cambaia, Decan and Achan lay all vpon the shoulders of these slaues. In a word, as

a lawfull and iuſt prince hath a great regard and ſingular care to haue the liking and loue of the people, by which being guarded and inuironed (as with a ſtrong rampire) he is able to withſtand all attempts: ſo contrariwiſe tyrants knowing themſelues hatefull to the people, imploy their whole ſtudie how to winne the fauour of their ſoldiers and ſlaues, thereby to repreſſe innouations at home, and inuaſions from abroad. Seeing therefore the ſafetie and foundation of their greatnes is built vpon the intertainment of their ſoldiers, as their Nairs, their Ianizars, free or bond, ſtrangers or ſubiects, yea whatſoeuer they bee, it muſt needes follow that onely actions of warre be the ende and ſcope of their cogitations, as likewiſe that they bee verie prodigall to keepe their eſtates very well furniſhed and appointed with ſoldiers and prouiſions. And theſe reaſons I take to be a ſufficient inducement to beleeue theſe reports of the king of Cambaia, and theſe other barbarous Indian princes. For (beſides that I ſpake of before) it is reported, that with this armie did march a thouſand pieces of Ordinance, amongſt which were fower baſiliskes, euerie one drawne with an hundred yoke of oxen: fiue hundred wagons laden with gun-powder and bullets, two hundred armed Elephants; fiue hundred veſſels full of gold and ſiluer to paie ſouldiers wages; many princes and petie lords with their courtiers and followers, merchants, vittailers, artificers, and their ſeruants numberleſſe. Notwithſtanding their incredible preparation, he was twiſe ouerthrowen by *Marhumedio:* once in the territorie of the citie of Doce, another time at Mandao, from whence diſguiſing his apparell to ſaue his life, he fled to Diu. Being out of danger and feare, he ſent embaſſadors to *Soliman*, with a preſent eſteemed woorth ſix hundred thouſand crownes, deſiring his aide and aſſiſtance in theſe warres. But afterwards weighing in his minde, that his affaires required ſpeedier ſuccours, hee contracted a league with thoſe Portugals, which were neereſt adioyning: to make them his friends and partners of the warre, the compoſition was, that he ſhould permit them to build a caſtell in the Iland of Diu. Now to ſpeake of *Marhumedius*. His fortunes were not much vnlike to thoſe of *Tamerlane*: for as this prince brought terror

terror and feare vpon the inhabitants of Perſia and Aſia; ſo did that, no leſſe innouation and trouble vpon India and the Orient: this defeated in battell *Baiazet* emperor of Turkes, that ouerthrew *Badurius* king of Cambaia, and his armie farre greater then his owne: both of them had the ſirname of *Great*. When the Mogors vnderſtood of the riches of India, and the fertilitie thereof, they neuer ceaſed by a continued courſe of victorie their armes and inuaſions, vntil they had made themſelues Lords of all the prouinces lying betweene Caucaſus and the ſea, Ganges and the riuer Indus: in this tract are contained 47. kingdomes. For *Adabar* the ſucceſſor of *Marbumedius* woon Madabar, with the better part of Cambaia. Of what goodly conſequence this prouince is, may be imagined by the famous cities of Madabar Campana (ſo called for the ſituatiõ vpon the top of an high hill riſing in the middeſt of a ſpacious plaine) and Cambaia (a citie conſiſting of one hundred and thirtie thouſand houſes) as likewiſe by the populous hoſt of king *Badurius*, his warlike prouiſion for ſuch an armie, and plentie of graine to ſuſtaine ſuch a multitude. I aſſure you the woorld affoords not a ſoile for al neceſſaries for the life of man (as rice, corne, pulſe, ſugar, oxen, ſheepe, pullen of all ſortes, and ſilke) more richer or plentifull then this prouince, wherein alſo there are reported to bee ſixtie thouſand borroughes: which number certainly is very great and admirable. *Guicciardine* writeth, that in Netherland within the territorie of the 17. prouinces are contained 208. walled townes, and 150. borroughes, enioying the rights and priuiledges of cities, & 6300. villages hauing pariſh churches. In Naples are 1800. of theſe ſome are townes, ſome but caſtles. In Bohemia are 780. townes, and 32. thouſand villages. In France (as *Iohn Bodine* writeth) there are 27. thouſand borroughes hauing churches and bels, beſides thoſe in Burgundie, which in thoſe times were not numbred amongſt the townes of France. I write not this to induce a true and abſolute iudgement of the power of any prouince by the number of pariſhes, for I knowe that ought to be made according to their greatnes, but yet their number maketh much to the purpoſe, as in both which, Cambaia may carrie the credite and eſteeme of a moſt ſpacious,

populous and puiſſant kingdome.

Acabar alſo conquered the rich kingdome of Bengala; ſo that a man may truely ſay, that in this part of the orient there are three Emperors: one in Cambaia, the other in Narſinga, the third in Bengala: whereof Cambaia and Bengala far exceed all the other prouinces in fertilitie of ſoile, and concourſe of merchants: both riotouſly abounding in ſugar, cotten wool, cattell, elephants and horſes: in Bengala alſo groweth long pepper and ginger. The firſt, is watered and cut as it were into two halfes by the riuer Indus, the other by Ganges, hauing two famous mart townes, Satagan and Catagan.

The great Mogor doth likewiſe poſſeſſe the kingdomes of Citor, Mandao and Delly, wherein he keepeth his court. He hath infinite ſtore of horſes, elephants and camels, as alſo all ſorts of artillerie and warlike furniture, by meanes whereof, he is growen fearefull to the whole inhabitants of the Eaſt. It is written of him, that he is able to bring into the field 300. thouſand horſe, and that there are within his dominions fiftie thouſand elephants.

Some man perhaps will aske, how it commeth to paſſe that this Prince (being ſo mightie, and his neighbours ſo naked, vnarmed and poore) doth not get into his poſſeſſion the dominion of the reſt of India and the Orient? In this as in the former vnlikelihoods, the wiſeſt man is ſooneſt anſwered. There are many obſtacles: one is, that as the ſpirit and bodie of man cannot endure in continuall trauell and motion (for that is proper to God and Nature onely:) ſo a continued and open paſſage is not euermore giuen to the ambitious apprehenſions of kings and princes. Great Empires ſeldome feare forreine inuaſion, yet oftentimes faint they vnder their owne weight. It is not deſtinied vnto great things to ſtand alwaies at the higheſt, much leſſe to increaſe: they haue their flood, but vpon a condition, that there follow an ebbe. They are lifted on high, but by the irreuocable decree of Nature, that a fall ſucceed: yea & that themſelues by themſelues decline. The greater they are, the more ſubiect to mutabilitie: the larger, the harder to hold and manage: they moone but ſlowly, and of what effect celeritie is in warre, who knoweth not? The greateſt

teſt conqueſt carrieth the greateſt enuie with it, and greateſt care to conſerue what is got, and yet not care, but long continuance perfecteth theſe actions: and while time paſſeth, the neighbouring nations prouide (if not infeſt) for their owne ſafetie, yea moſt commonly by loſſe of time proceedeth the loſſe of victorious opportunitie. He that hath ouercome his enimie, ſtandeth oftentimes in feare of his friend, yea of ſuch as haue bin fellowes and partners with him in all his fortunes: ſo that to ſecure himſelfe of theſe, and ſuch like infinite caſualties, he is conſtrained euen in the courſe of victory to ſound the retraict, and ſurceaſe his deſignements. Againe, continuall victory maketh leaders inſolent, ſoldiers mutinous, refuſing to paſſe forward at the command of their generall, as it happened to *Alexander* & *Lucullus*. Great enterpriſes euen brought to their wiſhed end, enrich the purſes of certaine priuate men, but leaue the Princes cofers emptie, who neuertheleſſe muſt be at the charge to maintaine continual Companies, and keep them in continuall pay; without which courſe, the caſhed ſoldier is euer readie to follow any faction whenſoeuer it ſhall be offered. Moreouer, this numberleſſe armie, which *Marhumedius* led againſt the king of Cambaia, did not only waſte the regions where through it paſſed and encamped, but likewiſe by deuouring all things that the face of the earth yeelded, bereaued it ſelfe of the meanes, which nature in meaſure affoorded to euery one to maintaine his life: and ſo it often happeneth, that thoſe armies which in apprehenſion ſeeme inuincible for their hugenes, are moſt commonly ouerthrowen by famine, the forerunner of peſtilence. For proofe hereof we haue ſeene the inundations of *Attila*, *Tamerlan*, and thoſe barbarous nations ſtand on foote but a little ſpace, whereas the Grecians, Macedonians, Carthaginians, Romanes, Spaniards and Engliſh, haue done great matters with meane armies. For things that are moderate laſt and indure, (as ſmall riuers) which what they cannot doe in one yeere, in two or more they finally accompliſh; whereas immoderate and violent, are like vnto Torrents, making more noiſe and furie then hurt or hinderance, violently comming, and violently carrying themſelues awaie. Therefore againſt ſuch

mightie

mightie impreſſions, the ſureſt ſafetie is, to draw the warre out in length, and onely to ſtand vpon the defenſiue: for let ſuch armies reſt aſſured, that they cannot ſo long hold out, but they will wauer, either for want of prouiſion, ſcarcity of coine, infection of the aire, or infirmities of their owne bodies. The other thing is, that proſperitie blindeth the winner, making him careleſſe; aduerſitie ripeneth the looſer, and maketh him warie and induſtrious: ſo fortune changing her copie, the affaires of the winner decline, and the good ſucceſſe of the looſer groweth euerie daie better then other. Beſides, conqueſts are not perfected but by proceſſe of time, and in proceſſe of time old age creepeth vpon the perſons of Princes, and how fit a craſie bodie, and a vigorous ſpirit nummed with old age, is for the conſummation of a conquered eſtate, the liues of *Iulius Ceſar* and *Charles* the fift may ſtand for examples.

Laſtly to anſwere thoſe, who vnleſſe they be eie witneſſes, will neuer be anſwered, let them know that nothing ſo much hindereth the inuaſiue ambition of this prince, as the nature of places. For Caucaſus ſtretching it ſelfe into a thouſand branches in thoſe parts, incompaſſeth whole kingdomes with ſome parcels thereof: by ſome it runneth by the ſides; to others, it is more defenſiue then any artificiall rampire: ſometime it wholy ſhutteth vp paſſages, ſometime it maketh them inacceſſible. Theſe difficulties are more iniurious to the *Mogor* then to any other prince, becauſe the ſtrength and ſinewes of his forces conſiſt in horſe; which as they are of great conſequente in Campania, ſo amongſt hils and rockes they are of ſmall ſeruice. Of this qualitie are the frontires of Perſia, and the kingdome of Sableſtan, on euerie ſide hemd in with that part of Caucaſus, which the Grecians call Paropamiſe. Segeſtan is likewiſe ſo inuironed, that the riuer Il-mento (were it not for ſearching out infinite windings and turnings through naturall vallies) could hardly finde paſſage to pay his tribute to the famous Ganges. In Cambaia it ſelfe, where the Mogors are of ſuch fearefull puiſſance, liue the Resbuti, not dreading them one whit, by reaſon of the ſtrength of the mountaines. Theſe Resbuti are the remainder of the Gentiles, that betooke themſelues to the mountaines betweene Cambaia

baia and Diu, when the Mahumetans firſt entred theſe countries; and ſince that day by ſtrong hand they haue preſerued their libertie, infeſting verie often the plaine countrey with their incurſions. Other prouinces there are vtterlie barren, not onelie wanting water, but all neceſſaries elſe: of this kinde is Dolcinda, vpon the skirts of Cambaia, thorough which it is impoſſible to leade an armie. To theſe diſcommodities you may adde the loſſe of time, which Princes (being lords of ample and ſpacious dominions) are conſtrained to make in their voiges. For the better part of ſommer is ſpent before they can arriue at their rendeuous with their horſes halfe dead through trauell, and the armie halfe in halfe in number and courage diminiſhed, yea winter ouertaketh them, commodious for their enimies, and diſaduantagious for them. For they muſt lie in the field and open aire amongſt mire and froſts, their enimies vnder a warme roofe, and holeſome harbour. Whereupon wiſe princes, which haue beene to make long land-iourneies through diuers prouinces of diuers natures, for feare of ſuch like diſcommodities, haue thought it beſt to prouide ſhipping, and to vſe the opportunitie of riuers or ſea, as did *Cæſar Germanicus* in the warre of Germanie, after he perceiued that in the protracting of time (which was requiſite for the marching of his armie) the greater part of his men and horſes were idlie conſumed by infirmities, labour, and the length of iourneies. But the Mogor is vtterly deſtitute of this aduantage: vpon one ſide he hath no hauen, on an other the Portugals are his iealous neighbours, who with two caſtles of great ſtrength, at Diu and Damain, haue ſhut vp the whole gulfe of the Cambaian ſea. Finally, the puiſſance of their neighbours hath beene as great a controule to their furious inuaſions, as any other naturall cauſe: viz. the king of Barma, who is nothing inferior in power and riches: for hee is lord of ſo many kingdomes, & of ſo fierce and warlike a people, and can bring ſuch ſwarmes into the field, that he is feareleſſe of any his Tartarian neighbours. And as the Mogor ruleth farre and wide betweene Ganges and Indus, ſo doth this king betweene Ganges and Siam. As the one deuiſeth to offend; ſo by little and little the other waxeth wiſe to defend.

For

For by nature man is more prone to procure his owne safetie, then ready by wrong to oppresse others, being alwaies more carefull to conserue, then forward to destroy. It cannot be expressed how full of subtiltie, shifts, deuises, and industry man is to defend him and his: for he vseth for his owne safegard, not that onely which is properly defensiue; but euen that also which humane wisedome hath inuented or nature created any way offensiue. Neither euer was there any instrument inuented for offence, but that the same hath been turned to defence; of which kind are castles built of later times, and the deuises of moderne fortification. And therefore the closest castles are neuer accounted the best, bicause they which are forced to guard such places, are depriued of the facilitie of offending the enimie by sallies, shot, wilde-fire, and such like: all which, and many other stratagemes very easily performed in an open hold. But of all inuentions, there is none more admirable then that of fortification, for euen the termes thereof (as Curtains, counterscarps, parapets, trenches, vamures, mines, and countermines, casemats, and such like phrases) are verie ingenious and mysticall; for by this arte fewe soldiers haue resisted great armies; and a small place made tenable, hath wasted the forces and treasure of a mightie Emperour: As well witnessed the fortunes of 800. Portugals at Demain vpon the coast of Cambaia, who by this arte scorned and deluded the whole forces and attempts of this mightie Mogor.

The kingdome of China.

IN times past the kingdome of China hath been farre larger then now it is. For it appeereth by their histories (cõtaining the Annales of 2000. yeeres and vpwardes) and by other of their manuscript Chronicles written in their owne language, (whose fragments are yet to bee seene) that their kings were Lords almost of all the sea coast of Asia from the streight of Anian, to the kingdome of Pegu: the prouinces of Meletai, Bacam, Calan, Boraga, and other territories,

territories, ſcituated vpon the north ſide of Pegu: where their monuments with their epitaphes and deuiſes are to be ſeene at this day. For in all the foreſaid regions, the reliques of their ancient ceremonies, (whereby the knowledge of the Mathematiques, as the diuiſion of the yeere into moneths, the Zodiake into twelue ſignes, true teſtimonies of their Emperie) are obſerued and taught by tradition. Neither is the time long, ſithence all thoſe kingdomes accounted the king of China their ſoueraigne, ſending their ambaſſadors with preſents to his court euery third yeere. Theſe ambaſſadors ought to be fower at leaſt, for before they coulde arriue at their iourneies end, ſome of them either by remotenes of place, difficult acceſſe of audience, or delay in diſpatch, could not but ſurely die; thoſe whoſe chance it was to ſcape, the Chinois in ſome ſet banquet woulde poiſon, and erect vnto them ſtately tombes, with the inſcription of their names, the place from whence they came, and with the title of ambaſſadors: thereby (ſay they) to commit to eternitie the remembrance of the bounds of their empire. They inlarged their dominions no leſſe vpon the Ocean, then vpon the continent. For they firſt of all inuaded the Iles of the Orient; next them followed the Giaui; then the Malaccans and Moores, and laſtly the Portugals and Caſtilians, who hold them at this day. But none of theſe nations were of equall power and magnificence to the Chinois: for beſides the conqueſt of the bordering Iles (which in regard of their numbers, their ſpaciouſnes and fertilitie, were of great reckoning) they became Lords of the greateſt part of all the inhabitable places in that vaſt Archipelago, euen to Zeilan, where they left their ſpeech and caracters, as alſo they did the like vpon the oppoſite continent. We read alſo in the papers of certaine Ieſuites, that in one quarter of the Iland of Saint Laurence, they found white people, which ſaide that they deſcended of the Chinois. They firſt diſcouered the Moluccas, gaue names to the ſpices, and planted colonies in manie of them, which to this preſent keepe their old names, as Batta China a Muar, Batta China, Mauri: Batta ſignifieth a towne, Batta China, a towne of the Chinois. It is likewiſe thought that the inha-

bitants of Iaua deſcended of them, and to ſpeake truth, there is no great difference betweene their manner of liuing, clothing, building, induſtrie, traffike, and manuall occupations. But after the ſhipwracke of fowerſcore veſſels, and the loſſe of their people in the ſea of Zeilan, comparing their profit with their loſſe, they reſolued to trie no more ſuch hazards, but to containe themſelues within their owne bounds. And to cauſe this edict to be inuiolably obſerued, they enacted, that none thereafter vpon paine of the loſſe of his head ſhould offer to ſaile into thoſe parts: the kings themſelues did euer after abſtaine from future inuaſions. For ſithence they enioy a very earthly paradiſe, where nature and arte are at ſtrife to content the inhabitants, where no good thing is wanting, but much ſuperfluous and to ſpare; what mad men would conſume their bodies and treaſures in getting thoſe things, which are more chargeable to get, then profitable to keepe? *Polibius* writeth, that vpon the ſame reaſons the olde Carthaginians forſooke part of thoſe things, which before they had conquered. The Romanes after they had ſuffered a greeuous loſſe of their beſt veſſels in the ſecond Punicke warre, in meere diſpaire bid nauigation adieu; but afterwardes perceiuing that they who were commanders of the ſea, were likely to prooue Lords of the land, built a new nauie, and at length ſaw the ſucceſſe anſwere their lateſt opinions. Therefore can we not but aſcribe this reſolution of the Chinois rather to good conſcience and aduiſednes, then to wiſedome or good policie. For ſeeing there can be no greater follie then to hazard our owne goods, vpon hope to gaine anothers, to waſte the borders of our owne dominions to inuade our neighbours, to ſhed our owne blood vpon deſire to ſpill a ſtrangers: it is more honorable and worthie the office of a king, to content himſelfe with his owne right, rather then by wrong to poſſeſſe anothers. Content breedes ſtabilitie, conqueſt brings care to ſee to the conquered: therefore why ſhould any prince weare out himſelfe to inlarge his dominion, if inlargement doe not onely doe no good, but euen ſpoileth that which was good before, making that vncertaine which before was certaine, and weakening that which before was ſtrong. Let a wiſe prince vtterly refraine

ſuch

ſuch iournies; if they bring not aſſured ſecuritie, and more then common profit. For ſecuritie is one ſcale wherein a ſtate hangeth, which, if the beame ſtand true, muſt onely aime at that which is likely to breede greater ſecuritie, and that is, the ſeiſing vpon ſtreights, ſconces, paſſages, and fit places to remooue the enemie far away: In the other ſcale ſhould hang profite, and that is, by conquering thoſe prouinces which are rich or able to yeeld all kinde of prouiſion for liuing creatures and furniture for war and ſhipping.

But to returne to the Chinois. When this ſurrender was reſolued in full counſell, they ſet the people whom they had vanquiſhed, free; yet ſome of their good wils remained feodaries, ſhadowing their eſtates vnder the wings of their puiſſance, as the kings of Corea, Lequi, Canchinchina and Siam. And notwithſtanding their retrait within their owne bounds, yet poſſeſſe they a dominion little leſſe then all Europe: for from the North towards the South, it reacheth from 17. to 52. degrees, from the Eaſt to the Weſt are 22. degrees. Pacquin, wherein the king keepeth his court is ſcituated in 48. degrees. The Empire is diuided into fifteene prouinces, ſixe maritime, Cantan, Foquem, Chiqueuan, Pantora, Nanquij, the reſt inland, Quichiu, Iuana, Quancij, Suiuam, Fuquam, Canſij, Xianxij, Nonam, Sancij. The prouinces of Quinci, Cantan, and Foquem are diuided from the vplandiſh, with mountaines like the Alpes, but not aboue two daies iourney aſunder. *Thomas Perez* the king of Portugals ambaſſador made fower moneths iourney from Cantan to Nanquij, alwaies bearing northerly.

It is not ſo ſpacious, but it is as fertill: for it yeeldeth not onely what is fitting for humane life, but whatſoeuer the delicate and effeminate appetite of man may luſt after. Many plants yeeld fruit twice or thrice a yere, & that not only by the temperature of the aire, but by the number of riuers and plentie of waters, which doe both cauſe traffike through euery corner of the region, and ſo water it on all ſides, that it reſembleth a moſt pleaſant & delectable garden plot. Of this plentie there are two cauſes: one, the prodigall expences of the king in digging of trenches through the whole land; ſomtime *Fertility.*

cutting through rockie mountaines, ſometime damming vp deepe vallies to make them leuell with high mountaines, and to draine the waters of lakes and mariſhes: the other, for that the whole region is ſcituated vnder the temperate Zone, and in no place, either by nature or mans induſtrie, wanteth moiſture; ſo that all creatures taking nouriſhment of heate and moiſture muſt needes heere woonderouſly proſper: In no place plants may take larger ſcope to ſpread their branches, nor cattell larger walkes to wander in, then in this countrie. The laſt reaſon is, for that the idle are neither ſeuerely puniſhed, nor altogither tolerated, euery one is forced to doe ſomewhat, no foote of land is left vnhusbanded, nor dram of ſtuffe caſt away vnwrought. Amongſt al admirables, one thing is woorthie conſideration, that in Cantan they keepe fower thouſand whales to grinde corne and rice. In China euery one is ſet about ſomewhat, according to his yeeres and ſtrength, one laboureth with his hand, one with his foote, one with his eie, another muſt be dooing with his toong, thoſe onely who are impotent in their limes, and haue no friends liuing to ſuccour them, are prouided for in hoſpitals. That none may excuſe themſelues, in ſaying he can doe nothing, euery one is bound to learne his fathers occupation, which is the reaſon that the children (borne as it were tradeſmen) learne their fathers occupations before they perceiue it, becõming in time moſt artificiall mechaniques. Hee that cannot liue at lande, ſeeketh his maintenance at ſea, (for that is no leſſe inhabited then the land,) yea infinite houſholds liue vpon the riuers in boats without comming to lande for a long ſeaſon. Some of theſe liue by ferrying ouer people, ſome by tranſporting paſſengers and their merchandiſe: others keepe ſhops, other veſſels of lodging for merchants and trauellers. Whatſoeuer is needfull for clothing, for foode or nouriſhment, delight or eaſe of a ciuill life, is to be found in the midſt of great riuers. Manie nouriſh all ſorts of poultrie, eſpecially ducks in their veſſels. To hatch the egges and nouriſh the yoong ones, they vſe not the dams, as we do, but an artificiall heate, in a manner as they do in Egypt, eſpecially at Cair. All night he keepeth them in his boat, and at morning ſendeth them to feed in the fields

fields ſowed with rice, whence all day long hauing fed vpon the weedes, to the great good of the husbandman, they returne towards euening to their cages, at the ſound of a little bell or cimball. Manie liue by carrying fiſh, both ſalt and freſh, into the high countries: for in the ſpring, when the riuers riſe through thawes and land-flouds, ſo incomparable quantities of ſea fiſh do abound in the hauens or creekes, that the fiſhermen depart rather wearied then wanting. This fiſh the skippers buy for a ſmall matter of the fiſhermen, and keeping them aliue in certaine veſſels made for the purpoſe, they tranſport them into prouinces far remote from the ſea. There they are ſold and preſerued in pooles and ſtewes neere cities and great townes to ſerue the markets and tables of the Chinois all the yeere long.

Becauſe it is forbidden any inhabitant to paſſe out of the land without leaue, and therewith neither but for a time limited, it muſt needs be that by the daily increaſe of people, the countrey be euen peſtered with inhabitation. It hath beene obſerued amongſt themſelues, that for euery fiue that haue died, ſeauen haue beene borne. The climate is ſo temperate, and the aire ſo wholeſome, that in mans memorie any vniuerſall peſtilence hath not beene knowen to infeſt the countrey. Notwithſtanding leaſt any man ſhould thinke this people to inioy all ſweetes without ſome mixture of ſower, you muſt note, that their earthquakes are more dreadfull to them then any peſtilence to vs: for whole cities haue beene ſwallowed, and prouinces made deſart by this puniſhment. They choke vp the courſe of ancient chanels, and make new, where were neuer any before, they lay mountaines leuell with the ground, making hauocke of the people. In the yeere 1555. a deluge breaking out of the bowels of the earth, deuoured 180. miles of firme land, with the townes and villages ſtanding thereupon: thoſe which ſcaped the flouds, lightning and fire from heauen deſtroied.

There are ſaide to bee in China 150. cities, 235. great townes, 1154. caſtles, and 420. boroughs without wals, wherein ſoldiers are quartered: of villages and hamlets (ſome of them conteining a thouſand houſholds) the number is in- *Cities.* *Villages.*

finite;

finite; for the countrey is so couered with habitation, that all China seemeth but as one towne. They haue two metropolitan cities, Nanquin and Panquin. In Nanquin towards the north the king keepeth his court; Vnder the iurisdiction of the one are seuen prouinces, vnder the other eight. Both of them are so spacious, that it is a daies iourney for a horseman to ride from one end to the other. Of the number of inhabitants no certainty can be produced, but according to manuscript relations, and report of trauellers, it is said, that the kingdome conteineth 70. millions of liuing soules. This is an admirable report, and not to be beleeued, if it be compared with the prouinces of Christendome, but surely something aboue conceite is to be credited to these spacious, populous, and barbarous nations. Let vs set the largenes of their prouinces, the circuite of their cities, their plentie and aboundance of all things, and in all places, either prospering by nature or mans industrie, with their numbers and inhabitation, and we shall finde a countrey like inough to affoord such a reckoning, cities and dwellings able to conteine them, and nourishment sufficient to maintaine them. Italie exceedeth not nine millions: Germanie (excluding the Swissers and Netherlands) not ten, and with the foresaide prouinces not aboue fifteene, which number peraduenture France may reach vnto. Spaine is farre inferior to Italy: Sicilie hath but one million, and three hundred thousand: England three millions, and Belgia as many, if by the continuance of the war in those countries that number be not much decaied. The Italians conceiting marueilous highly of themselues, thinke no prouince vpon the face of the earth for wealth and people comparable to Italy, but they forget, that as it is long, so it is narrow, and nothing wide or spacious, neither that two third parts haue not one nauigable riuer (a want of great consequence) neither that the Apenine, a mountaine rockie and barren, doth spred it selfe ouer a fourth part. Let them not deceiue themselues, nor condemne others plentie, by their owne wants, nor measure others excesse by their handfuls. For fertilitie, doth France in plentie of graine or cattle giue place to Italy? Or England, for cattle, wooll, fish, or mettall?

Or

Or Belgia, for number or goodlines of cities, excellency or artificers, wealth or merchandiſe? Or Greece for delectable or commodious ſcituation, hauens of the ſea, or pleaſant prouinces? Or Hungarie for cattle, wine, corne, fiſh, mines, and all good things elſe. But I will not ſtand vpon theſe diſcourſes, onely let me tell you, that Lumbardie containeth the thirde part of Italy, a prouince delightſome for battell plaines, and pleaſant riuers, without barren mountaines, or ſandie fieldes, and to be as full of people as the whole halfe of Italy beſides. Yea, what may be ſaid of Italy for profite or pleaſure, that may not be ſpoken particularly of France, England, Netherland and both the Pannonies? Wherefore ſithence the countrey is not onely large, mightie, and ſpacious, but vnited, populous, plentifull and rich, at leaſt let it bee beleeued and accounted for one of the greateſt empires that euer was.

Gouernment.

The gouernment is tyrannicall: for throughout the kingdome there is no other Lord but the king. They knowe not what an Earle, a Marqueſſe or a Duke meaneth. No fealtie, no tribute or tole is paid to any man but to the king. He giueth al magiſtracies and honors. He alloweth them ſtipends wherewith to maintaine their eſtates, and they diſpatch no matter of weight without his priuitie. His vaſſals obey him, not as a king, but rather as a God. In euery prouince ſtandeth his portraiture in gold, which is neuer to be ſeene but in the newe moones, then is it ſhewed and viſited of the magiſtrates, and reuerenced as the kings owne perſon. In like manner the gouernours and Iudges are honored, no man may ſpeake vnto them but vpon their knees. Herein the people ſhew their baſe mindes, making themſelues the ſlaues (not the ſubiects) of the prince. Strangers are not admitted to enter into the kingdome, leaſt their cuſtomes and conuerſation ſhould breede alteration in manners, or innouation in the ſtate. They are onely permitted to traffike vpon the ſea coaſts, to buy and ſell vittaile, and to vent their wares. They that doe traffike vpon the land, aſſemble many togither, and elect a gouernour amongſt them, whom they terme, Conſul. In this good maner ſtrangers enter the kingdome, but alwaies awaited on by the cuſtomers and kings officers. The inhabitants cannot trauell

but

but with licence, and with that neither, but for a prefixed ſeaſon: and to be ſure of their returne, they grant no leaue, but for traffikes ſake, and that in ſhips of 150. tun and not aboue: for they are iealous, that if they ſhould goe to ſea in bigger veſſels, they would make longer iourneis. To conclude it is a religious lawe of the kingdome, that euerie mans endeuours tend wholy to the good and quiet of the common wealth. By which proceedings, iuſtice the mother of quietnes, policie the miſtreſſe of good lawes, and induſtrie the daughter of peace, doe flouriſh in this kingdome. There is no countrey moderne or ancient gouerned by a better forme of policie, then this Empire: by this gouernment haue they ruled their Empire two thouſand yeeres: And ſo hath the ſtate of Venice flouriſhed 1100. yeeres, the kingdome of France 1200. It is 200 yeeres ſince they caſt off the yoke of the Tartars, after their ninetie yeeres gouernment.

For their arts, learning, and policie, they conceiue ſo well of themſelues, that they are accuſtomed to ſay, that they haue two eies; the people of Europe, one; the reſidue of the nations, none. They giue this good report of the Europians, becauſe of their acquaintance with the Portugals, with whom they traffike in Macoa and other places, and the renowme of the Caſtilians, who are their neighbours in the Philippinæ.

Forces. By the multitudes of people (before ſpoken of) you may imagine the ſtate of his forces, for herein all other prouiſions take their perfection. But to ſpeake ſomewhat in particular. The power of this prince (remembring his contentment, and nature deteſting all inuaſions) is more readie and fit to defend then offend, to preſerue, rather then increaſe. His cities for the moſt part are builded vpon the bankes of nauigable riuers, enuironed with deepe and broad ditches, the wals built of ſtone and bricke, ſtrong aboue beleefe, and fortified with caualiers, and artificiall bulwarkes. Vpon the borders toward Tartarie (to make ſure worke againſt ſuch an enimie) they haue built a wal beginning at Chioi a city ſcituate betweene two moſt high mountaines, and ſtretching it ſelfe towards the eaſt ſixe hundred miles betweene mountaine and mountaine, vntill it touch the cliffes of the Ocean. Vpon the other frontires

tires you may behold many, but ſmall holds, ſo built to ſtay the courſe of the enimie, vntill the countrey forces be able to make head, and the royall armie haue time to come leiſurely forward: for in 400. great townes he keepeth in continuall pay forces ſufficient vpon the leaſt warning, to march to that quarter whether occaſion calleth. Euerie citie hath a garriſon and guard at the gates, which at nights are not onely faſt locked but ſealed, and may not be opened before the ſeale at morning be throughly viewed. To ſpeake truth, their ſoldiers, horſemen and footemen, by land or ſea, are more famous for their numbers, their gallant furniture, and plentie of prouiſion, then for ſtrength and courage. For the inhabitants partly by their effeminate and wanton kinde of life, partly by their forme of gouernment, whereby they are made vile, baſe and vnbragious, haue little valour or manhood left them. They vſe no forren ſoldiers, except thoſe whom they take in warre: theſe they ſend into the inland countries, where being marked (to diſtinguiſh them from other) they ſerue more like ſlaues then ſoldiers, yet haue they pay, with rewards for their good ſeruice, and puniſhment for their cowardize: true motiues to make men valarous. The reſt, which are not inrold, are not ſuffered to keepe weapons in their houſes.

Their ſea forces are nothing inferior to their land forces: for beſides their ordinarie fleets lying vpon the coaſtes for the ſafetie of the ſea townes, by reaſon of the abundance of nauigable riuers, and ſo huge a ſea-tract full of hauens, creeks and Ilands, it is thought that with eaſe they are able to aſſemble from fiue hundred to a thouſand great ſhips, which they terme Giunchi. *Sea forces.*

To thinke that treaſure can be wanting to leuie ſo great a number of ſhips, ſoldiers, and mariners, many men affirme, that the kings reuenues amount to 120. millions of gold, which value although it may ſeeme impoſſible to him that ſhall make an eſtimate of the ſtates of Europe with the kingdome of China; yet may it finde place of beleefe, if he doe but call to minde, firſt the nature and circuit of the Empire, being little leſſe then all Europe; next the populouſnes of the inhabitants, accompanied with ineſtimable riches, then the *Riches.*

diuersitie and plentie of mines of gold, siluer, iron, and other sorts of mettall, the vnspeakeable quantitie of merchandise, passing from hand to hand by so many nauigable riuers, so manie armes and inlets of the sea, their vpland cities and maritime townes, their toles, customes, and subsidies. For he taketh the tenth of all things which the earth yeeldeth, as barly, rice, oliues, wine, cotton wooll, flaxe, silke, all kinds of mettall, fruits, cattle, sugar, hony, rubarbe, campher, ginger, woad, muske, and all sorts of perfumes. The custome onely of salt in the citie Canto (which is not of the greatest nor the best traffike) yeeldeth 180. thousand crownes yeerely: the tenth of rice of one small towne and the adiacent territorie yeeldeth more then 100. thousand crownes. By these you may coniecture of the rest. He leaueth his subiects nothing, saue foode and clothing. He hath vnder him no Earles, Lords, or Nobles of any degree, no nor priuate persons indowed with great wealth. Wherefore sithence this empire is so huge, and all the profits thereof are in his hands, and at his disposition, how can the former assertion of so great a yeerely reuenue, to men of reason seeme anie thing admirable? There are two things moreouer which adde great credite to this reckoning, one is, that all his impositions are not paide in coine, but some in haie, some, in rice, corne, prouender, silke, cotton wooll, and such like necessaries: the other is, that the king of 120. millions which he receiueth, disburseth againe three parts thereof. And so sithence it goeth round from the king to the people, it ought to seeme no woonder, if the people be able to spare it againe for the princes vse at the yeeres end. For as waters do ebbe as deepe as they flow, so impositions easily leuied suffice for the expences of the state, and the people receiue againe by those expences as much as they laide out in the beginning of the yeeres.

Borderers. The king of China feareth no neighbour, but the great Cham of Tartaria: al the rest acknowledge vassalage. Against this enimie the ancient kings built that admirable wall, so much renowned amongst the woonders of the Orient. Towards the sea he bordereth vpon the Iaponians and Castilians. The distance betweene Iapan and China is diuers. From

Goto

Goto one of the Ilands of Iapan to the citie Liampo is three-ſcore leagues: from Cantan 297. The Ilanders of Iapan doe often ſpoile the ſea coaſts of China by their incurſions, deſcending on lande and harrying the countrey more like pyrats then men of war. For in regard that Iapan is diuided into manie Ilands, and into diuers ſeigniories (ill agreeing amongſt themſelues) though they excell the Chinois in armes and courage, yet are they not of ſufficient power to performe any action of moment againſt them. Vpon another frontire lie the Spaniards, of whom the Chinois not without good cauſe are verie iealous, becauſe of the ſcituation of the Philippinæ (commodiouſly ſeated for the inuaſion of China) and the fame of their riches well knowne to the Spaniſh. But the king of Spaine wiſheth rather to plant Chriſtianitie peaceablie amongſt them, whereof there was once good hope that God had opened a paſſage thereunto. For though the Chinois will ſuffer no ſtranger to enter within their dominions: yet certaine Ieſuits (zealous in the increaſing of Chriſtian religion) in a tertitorie, ſo ſpatious as that is, entred with great ſecrecie and danger, and obtayning the fauour of certaine gouernors, obtained a priuilege of naturalization, eſpecially frier *Michael Rogerius*, who in the yeere 1590. returned into Europe to aduiſe what courſe were beſt to take in this buſines. After whoſe departure, intelligence was brought from two friers remaining behind, that after diuers perſecutions they were conſtrained to forſake the citie wherein they ſoiourned and had conuerted many, and to make haſt to ſea-ward. The Portugals are likewiſe eie-ſores vnto them, but by the report of the iuſtice and moderation of *Ferdinand Andrada*, which he ſhewed in the gouernement of the Iland of Tamo, and by the traffike which they exerciſe in thoſe ſeas, they can better digeſt their neighbourhood, then that of the Spaniſh. This was the firſt Portugal that arriued in the citie of Cantan, and ſet a land *Thom. Perez* legier for *Emmanuell* king of Portugal. But other captaines being there afterwardes diſimbarked, behaued themſelues ſo leudly, that they occaſioned the ſaid Embaſſador to be taken for a ſpie, and caſt in priſon, where he died moſt miſerably: the reſidue were entreated as enimies. At laſt

it was permitted the Portugals for traffike sake to settle a factory in Macao, where againe before they had strongly fortified their colony, they were constrained to submit to the limitations of the Chinois, to whom in short time for their strength, wisedome, friendship and allians with the Castilians, they became suspicious: and therefore they doe dailie more & more bridle their libertie of traffike, carrying so heauie a hand towards them, that they woulde faine giue them occasion to leaue Macao of their owne wils, and retire backe againe into India, from whence they came.

The kingdome of Siam.

VPon the borders of China, (to speake nothing of Cauchinchina becausе we knowe nothing woorth relation of that territorie) ioyneth the countrie of Siam, accounted amongst the great kingdomes of Asia. It tooke his name of the citie Siam, scituated vpon the entrance of the riuer Menan: It is also called Corneo. It reacheth by east and west from the citie Campaa, to the citie Tauai, in which tract by the sea coast are contained fiue hundred leagues, whereof the Arabians once vsurped two hundred, with the cities Patan, Paam, Ior, Perca, and Malaco, nowe in the possession of the Portugals. From the south towardes the north it reacheth from Sinca-Pura scituace in-degree, to the people called Gneoni in 29. degrees. The lake Chiamai is distant from the sea sixe hundred miles: the vpland circuit stretcheth from the borders of Canchinchina beyond the riuer Auan, where lieth the kingdome of Chencra. Besides the lake of Chiamai, the riuers Menon, Menam, Caipumo, and Ana (which cause greater fertilitie of graine through the whole region, then a man woulde beleeue) are all his. The better part of his kingdomes are inuironed with the mountaines Ana, Brema, and Iangoma: the residue is plaine like Egypt, abounding with elephants, horses, pepper, golde, and tinne. In the west part

part are huge woodes, tygres, lyons, lynces and ſerpents. It containeth theſe prouinces, Cambaia, Siam, Muantai, Brema, Caipumo, and Chencra. The inhabitants of Lai which border vpon the north of the prouinces of Muantai & Caipumo, (and are diuided into three principalities,) are vnder his obeiſance. The firſt is that of Iangoma, the ſeconde of Cucrai, the thirde Lanca, neere Chathinchina. They inhabite a plaine and welthie countrey, into which the Gueoni (*Marke Paul* calleth their countrey Cangigu) diſcending from the mountaines to hunt for men, make oftentimes cruell butcheries amongſt them. The people of Lai for feare of theſe anthropophagi acknowledge the ſoueraigntie of Siam, but they often rebell, and obey as they liſt.

The wealth of the countrey may be conie&tured by the fertilitie: for being ſcituated in a plain, and watered with moſt noble and famous riuers (like an other Egypt) it cannot but abound with plentie of all good things. It bringeth foorth rice, graine of all ſorts, horſes, elephants, infinite ſtore of cattle, gold and tinne: ſiluer is brought thither by the people of Lai. By reaſon of this plentie, the people are drowned in pleaſure and wantonneſſe. They follow husbandrie, but take no great delight in manuell occupations, which cauſeth the kingdome to be poore in merchandiſe. Amongſt many other cities three are famous, *Cambaia*, ſeated vpon the riuer Menon: which riſing in China, is ſo hugely augmented by the falling in of many riuers, that his owne chanell not ſufficing for receit thereof, it renteth the earth to diſgorge it ſelfe, into a thouſand Ilands, making a ſecond Meotis more then 60. miles long. Meican ſignifieth the captaine, Menon the mother of waters. The ſecond citie is *Siam*, whoſe ſtatelines giueth the name to the whole countrey. It is a moſt goodly citie, and of admirable traffike, which may the better be imagined by the writing of a certaine Ieſuite, who reporteth, that beſides the naturall inhabitants, there are more then thirtie thouſand Arabian houſholds. The third citie is called *Vdia*, greater then Siam, conſiſting of fower hundred thouſand families. It is ſaid that two hundred thouſand boats belong to this citie, and the riuer Caipumo, whereupon it is ſeated. This

Fertility.

Cambaia.

Siam.

Vdia.

king

king to ſhew his maieſtie and magnificence keepeth a guard of ſixe thouſand ſoldiers and two hundred elephants: of theſe beaſts he hath thirtie thouſand, whereof he traineth three thouſand for the warre. This is a great matter, if you weigh their woorth and their charges in keeping.

Gouern-ment. His gouernment is rather tyrannicall then kinglike: for he is abſolute Lord of all the demeanes of the kingdome, and either ſetteth them out to husbandmen, or giueth them to his nobles for their maintenance, during life and pleaſure, but neuer paſſeth the right of inheritance. He beſtoweth vpon them likewiſe townes and villages with their territories, but vpon condition to maintaine a certaine number of horſemen, footemen and elephants. By this policie without anie penny pay or burden to the countrey, he is able to leuie twentie thouſand horſemen, and 250. thouſand footemen. Vpon occaſion he can wage a greater number, by reaſon of the largenes of his kingdomes, and the populouſnes of his townes. For *Vdia* onely (the chiefe ſeate of his kingdome) muſtered fiftie thouſand men. And although he be Lord of nine kingdomes, yet vſeth he no other nation in the warre but the Siamits, and the inhabitants of the two kingdomes of *Vdia* and *Muantai*. All honors and preferments are beſtowed vpon men of ſeruice in this kingdome.

In times of peace they haue their warlike exerciſes, and in certaine paſtimes which the king once a yeere exhibiteth at *Vdia*, are ſhewed all militarie feates of armes vpon the riuer Menon, where more then 3000. veſſels (which they terme Paraos) diuided into two ſquadrons, skirmiſh one againſt the other. Vpon the land runne the horſes and elephants, and the footemen try it out at ſword and buckler with point and edge rebated: the remainder of their daies they ſpend in riot and wantonnes.

Borderers. Their borders towards the eaſt reach to Canchinchina, betweene whom are ſuch huge woods, lions, tygers, leopards, ſerpents and elephants, that they cannot infeſt one another by armes. Towards the lake Chiamai they border vpon the Chinois. Towards the ſea they affront the Arabians & Portugals. The one tooke from them Patan, Paam, Ior, and Peam, the

the other Malaca, and the territorie adioyning; ſo that betweene them they bereaued him of two hundred miles of land: and contenting themſelues with the ſea coaſts, and the cuſtomes ariſing vpon the carrying out and bringing in of merchandiſe, they abſtaine from further inuaſion of the inland prouinces, and hold it good policie to keepe firme peace with the king and his countries. Toward the weſt lieth the kingdome of Pegu like an halfe moone, betweene the mountaines of Brama and Iangoma. Towardes the north lie the Gudoni, inhabiting the barreine and ſharpe mountaines, betweene whom and Siam dwell the people of Lay. This people is ſubiect to the crowne of Siam for feare of theſe Canibals, of whom (if it had not beene for his protection) they had long agone beene vtterly deuoured. Not fortie yeeres ſince the king made a iourney againſt them with twentie thouſand horſe (their horſe are ſmall, but excellent good in trauell) 250. thouſand footemen, and ten thouſand elephants; part imploied for ſeruice, part for carriage. No kingdome hath greater ſtore of theſe beaſts, or doth more vſe them. An innumerable number of oxen, buffals, and beaſts of carriage followed this armie, whom they ſlew when they wanted other prouiſion.

Hitherto haue we deuiſed of Siam and Pegu (as they ſtood) before the comming of the Portugals into India, but how in proces of time the ſtate was altered, you ſhall now heare. In times paſt diuers kingdomes of Barma ſcituated along the riuer towards the lake Chiamai obeyed the king of Pegu vnder the gouernment of certaine Lieutenants. Sixtie yeeres ſithence one of theſe captaines ruler of the kingdome of Tengu, by the aide of his faction and reputation of his vertues, entred into rebellion, and ſlaying the Nobles of the land, vſurped the kingdome. Afterward he forced the cities, and conquered the kingdome of Prom, Melintai, Calam, Mirandu, and Ana, all inhabited by the Brammans, for the ſpace of one hundred and fiftie leagues towards the north. He aſſaied likewiſe the conqueſt of Siam; but comming before Vdia the chiefe citie of the kingdome, he was forced to raiſe his ſiege and depart. He vndertooke this iourney with 300. thouſand footemen,

conſuming

consuming more then three moneths in making way for his army through stony mountaines, huge woods and inaccessible places; and in lieu for the losse of 120. thousand of his soldiers, he tooke two hundred thousand Siamits prisoners. At his returne home he inuaded the kingdome of Pegu, and woone it. Afterward in the yeere 1507. he renued his iourney against Siam, and ouercame the king thereof, who slew himselfe with poison, but he tooke his sonnes and with them the better part of the kingdome. He belegred Vdia with a million of men and vpward. Our late writers call this man and his successors (because their fame arose by the conquest of the kingdomes of Brama) kings of Brama or Barmia, but the Portugals of a more sounde iudgement grounded vpon neerer neighbourhood, call them kings of Pegu.

And for that it may not seeme that what we write as concerning their infinite numbers, is either fabulous or reported altogither vpon hearesay, because that now, heerebefore and hereafter we shall haue occasion to discourse of this point, we thinke it not amisse, to spend some time in shewing how & by what likelihoods, both in this and the other barbarous dominions such huge and numberlesse companies are leuied and nourished. First therefore it is grounde infallible that populous armies, at home or abroad, cannot long endure without great reuenues, and a continuall sea of readie money: for as the members of our bodie cannot mooue without sinewes, nor motion auaile vs, if ioints were wanting; so without money an armie can neuer be gathered, nor being gathered kept togither, nor resolutely lead foorth to any piece of seruice, if coine be wanting, which preuenteth infinite mischances, and draweth after it armour, prouision, victuals, and whatsoeuer is necessarie for life or armes. And sithence the wealth of Princes, euen as of priuate persons (from whose purses they supply their occasion) hath limits and measure: Let them not thinke to begin any long warre, much lesse to continue it, vnlesse they throughly prouide aforehand, or are Lords of mines rich and inexhaustible: for great treasures are soone spent; and that which hath thriftily been gathered in peace, must prodigally be disbursed in warre: euen one yeere of warre wasteth

the

the repriſals of many yeeres peace. Which mooued a certaine Portugall captaine to tell king *Sebaſtian*, prouiding for his iournie into Barbarie, that warres ſhould be performed with three ſtreames; the firſt of men, the ſecond of victuall, the third of ſiluer. For all warres are exceeding chargeable, but thoſe moſt exceſſiue and beyond opinion which are managed far from home. The great Turke in his Perſian iourneies felt the ſmart hereof, who thought he were ſo potent a prince, was notwithſtanding conſtrained to raiſe the value of his coine, and abaſe the allay, ſo farre foorth, that the Ianizars finding themſelues aggrieued thereat, raiſed commotions, ſet fire on the citie of Conſtantinople, and rifled a great part thereof. Neither coulde the king of Spaine ſuſtaine the burden of ſo many warres, and in ſo remote prouinces, if he truſted to no other ſupplies then thoſe of Spaine, but Fortune hath giuen him a countrie prodigall in mines of gold and ſiluer, aſſuredly paying the expence of one yeere with the income of another. This clotheth and feedeth the ſoldier, bringeth them to a head, and maketh them to march cheerefully vpon all ſeruices. *Iohn Iaques Triuulce* being demanded how many things were neceſſarie in warre, anſwered three, Monie, monie, monie. But theſe grounds onely holde when the burden of the warre lieth vpon the purſe of the prince and his people: for ſometime it happeneth, that the ſoldier liueth vpon the enimies countrie, as did the Huns, Vandals, Gothes, Arabians, and in our daies *Tamerlane*. They entred the prouinces without controle or reſiſtance, being vnprouided of forces, and made pray and ſpoile of whatſoeuer came into their reaches; they ranſacked the cities, and fed vpon the villages. The like good lucke had the Portugals in the eaſt Indies, & the Caſtilians in the Weſt, but the one far better then the other: for neuer any nation conquered with leſſe coſt ſo much as the Spaniards haue done in New Spaine and Peru. But let not any people thinke to doe ſo in theſe daies, no not in Aſia, or Afrike, much leſſe in Europe, where the vſe of great ordinãce is in perfection, and the arte of fortification ſo ingenious, that one caſtell ſhall be able to ſuſtaine, yea well prouided, to wearie the forces of the greateſt potentate. The Turkes at Zigeth

(a ſmall caſtell in Hungarie) approoued this, which in the yeere 1566. *Soliman* belegered with three hundred thouſand men of warre, and at laſt forced, but with ſo great a ſlaughter of his people, that ſcant the third part of this huge armie returned to their houſes. In like manner the Portugals in the beginning of their Indian acquiſitions, with a few ſoldiers and in little time woon admirable victories; but when the Barbarians began to grow acquanted with artillerie, to allure Carpenters and Maſons to build them caſtles, and to arme veſſels to ſea, their courages became calme, and there ſet an end to their *plus vltra*. The like did the Spaniſh in the new world, to their *Non ſufficit orbis*. For after their firſt good fortunes they found in Noua Hiſpania, the Chichimechi, and in Peru the Pilcoſonij, the Chiriguani and the Luchij, people ſo wel prouided to ſtop the furious courſe of their former victories, that ſithence, in twenty ſeuen yeeres ſpace they haue not been able to adde one footes bredth to their new empery. In the vale of Aranco, Tecapel, and the kingdome of Chile, when the inhabitants ſawe them to be wounded and ſlaine with the ſtrokes of their arrowes and ſwords, they neuer afterward vouchſafed them their former reuerence, nor carried the woonted conceit of their immortalitie: and now being beaten by experience, they feare not the cariere of the horſe, nor the terror of the harquebuſe.

If the warre be at or within our owne doores, then is it eaſie to leuie ſtrong and populous forces, as we reade of the Crotons, Sibarites and Gauntois, who made head againſt the power of France with foureſcore thouſand fighting men. For when the warre was made in theſe populous countries and neere at hand; euerie man made one in the medle, gallantly armed, and well prouided with furniture and victuall to hold out certaine daies: but when the warre continued longer then expectation, for want of money and foode euerie man retired, one to the plough, another to his ſhop, the reſt to thoſe trades, whereby they ſuſtained themſelues and their families. The Scots for want of wealth neuer made famous iourney out of the Iland, but at home they haue lead mighty armies for a ſhort time, either to reuenge wrongs or defend

their

their frontires : euen as did the Romanes for certaine ages, warring with their neighbours at their priuate charges. They tooke the field euerie man prouided with victuall for two or three daies, and in one battell and few houres finiſhed that warre. But in the iourney againſt the Veij, the warre continuing beyond opinion, the State was inforced to procure pay for the armie. That armies may far eaſier be gathered in the eaſt and in Africk, then in Europe: the reaſons are many. Thoſe regions for the moſt part are more plentifull and copious of all neceſſaries for humane life : the people of the ſouth are better contented with little then we : their diet is ſpare and ſimple, onely to maintaine life and not exceſſe : but the Europeans muſt eate and drinke, not to ſuſtaine nature, but to comfort the ſtomacke and expell colds. Wine which with vs is deerer then bread, is not to be found amongſt them ; their waters are better then our drinkes. Cookerie is in no ſuch requeſt with them, as with vs, nor their tables accuſtomed to ſuch cates : their banquets are onely furniſhed with rice and mutton. Neither doe the people of the eaſt ſpend a quarter of that clothing which we doe : they goe to the warre halfe naked, hiding nothing but their priuities : they ſtand not in need of that number of workemen which we doe, amongſt whome the greateſt part of our life is ſpent in weauing and deuiſing ſtuffes and faſhions to cloath the carcaſe and adorne the bodie, with cloath, ſilke, colours and imbroderies. All their expences are onely vpon cloathing of cotton wooll, and that but from the nauell to the knee. Theſe are the reaſons which I meant to lay, why they may gather fortie thouſand men with more eaſe, then we ten ; and to theſe may be added this as the laſt, that vpon ordinance and their furnitures ; vpon prouiſions and their carriages ; vpon horſes, pioners, and a thouſand like neceſſaries, infinite ſummes are expended ; of which the people of the eaſt are vtterly ignorant, eſpecially thoſe which haue not to deale with the Portugals or Arabians. They goe to the warre without armour, without curaces, helmets, lances, or targets, which with vs cannot be conueyed from place to place without great expence. *Virgil* calleth this luggage, *inuſtum faſcem*, becauſe it ſeemeth a needleſſe trouble : and

therein we degenerate much from the ancient Romanes, who for ten daies iourney and more, carried euerie mans his proper weapons both offensiue and defensiue, yea and sometimes his victuals. What should we speake of the armies of the Assirians, and Ethiopians, of Belus, Ninus, Simiramis, Cambises, Cirus, Darius, Sesostris and Sesacus, were they not as huge and populous by the report of all histories, as these whereof we intreat? Or in times lesse ancient haue not we and our ancestors seene the Arabians, Tartarians and Turkes inuading prouinces with armies of three hundred thousand people and vpward. By moderne examples and memorie of later accidents to giue credit to the ancient, I will set downe what happened in Angola (a noble and rich prouince of the west Ethiop adioyning to Congo) reported by the letters of certaine Iesuits and Portugall captaines. In the yeere 1584. *Paulus Diazius* by the fauour of God and valour of his people, vpon the second day of Februarie put to flight the king of Angola, and defeated his armie, consisting of one million and two hundred thousand Moores: which may well proone that these populous armies are of little seruice and small continuance, rather like violent stormes, then dripping showers; and though with ease they are gathered, yet without greater prouision then any prouince is able to affoord them, they are not easily held together. When their prouision is spent, they begin to break, and bid adue to the action; and that most commonly not in the middest of their course, but euen in their first remooues: for merchants, victualers, tailors, shomakers, smiths, and such like follow not their warres: and if they should, then this inconuenience would follow; that for one million of soldiers, it were necessarie to prouide another million of wagons, packehorses, carters, carpenters, victualers, merchants and their seruants, and then, neither riuers would serue them for drinke, nor the fields with bread, nor the earth for lodgings: so must they needs sinke vnder their owne waight, which the eastern Princes (leading these vnaccustomed numbers vpon long iourneis) in some sort forecasting, did alwaies prouide incredible masses of money, victuall, and such like warlike prouisions, long before they entred into action: as was well seene in

Xerxes,

Xerxes, who to maintaine that great armie, as well at ſea as at lande, which he led for the conqueſt of Greece, ſpent ſeuen yeeres in preparation for the iourney.

To returne to the king of Barma: of late yeeres he tooke the hauens of Martela and Pernaſor; and turning his armies ſometime towards the north, ſometime toward the weſt, he vexed the Princes of Caor and Tipura, tooke the kingdomes of Aracan and Macin, leading vpon this iourney 300. thouſand men, and fortie thouſand elephants.

Aracan. Aracan is a kingdome rounde inuironed with mountaines and woodes as with a wall or trench: the chiefe citie which giueth the name to the countrey is ſcituated vpon a riuer fifteene leagues from the ſea, and thirtie fiue from Catagan.

Macin. Macin is a kingdome abounding in Aloës: this woode, which the Arabians call Calambuco, and others *Lignum vitæ* for the ſweete ſauour is valued by the people of the eaſt at the waight in ſiluer. In India and Cambeia they vſe it at the buriall of great Lords, in bathes and in other wantonnes. It groweth moſt frequent in the rough mountaines of Campa, Cambaia and Macin. That which is brought to vs is in no eſteeme with them: the right is found (ſay they) in Congo and Angola and the bordering countrey, and vſed by them in all their grieuous and dangerous maladies; which if it be true, I maruell that the Portugals will let ſlip ſo precious a commoditie.

Narſinga.

IN the rowe of theſe potent princes inhabiting betweene Indus and Ganges dwelleth the king of Narſinga. Whatſoeuer lieth betweene the mountaines Gate and the gulfe of Bengala, betweene the promontories Guadauerne and Comorin for the ſpace of two hundred leagues, abounding as prodigally (as any other prouince in the Indies) with all good things, is vnder his dominion. The waters ſometime falling from the mountaine, ſometime from

from the riuers, and receiued into trenches, meres and lakes doe woonderfully coole, moyſten, and inrich this land, cauſing the graine and cattell to proſper aboue imagination. It is no leſſe plentifull of rice, birdes, beaſtes, wilde and tame, buffals, elephants, and mines of precious ſtones and mettals. It breedeth no races of horſe for the warre, but they buie them of the Arabian and Perſian merchants in great numbers: the like do all the Princes of Decan. Within the bounds of Narſinga dwell fiue nations different in language; he hath many ſtrong places vpon the Indian Ocean. Canora is at his command, wherein are the hauen townes of Mangolar, Melind, Batticala, and Onor: but the Portugals receiue the cuſtome of Batticala, and in times paſt of Onor. In Narſinga are two imperiall cities; Narſinga and Biſnagar: by reaſon whereof he is termed ſometime king of Narſinga, ſometime king of Biſnagar.

Riches. It is vndoubtedly beleeued, that this king receiueth yeerely twelue millions of ducats, of which he laieth vp but two or three, the reſidue he expendeth vpon the troups of his ſoldierie, that is to ſaie, fortie thouſand Nairs, and twenty thouſand horſemen kept in continuall pay. Vpon neceſſitie he is able to leuie a far greater number: for beſides theſe allowances he ſetteth out certaine lands to 200. captaines vpon condition to keepe in readines a proportion of horſemen, footemen, and elephants. The wages of theſe captaines (to ſome of whom he giueth a million of ducats yeerely) may be an argument of his great reuenues; for to theſe proiects, this prince and all the potentates of the Eaſt, keepe in their poſſeſſion all the profits of the lands, woodes, mines, yea and the waters of pooles and riuers through their whole dominions. No man may waſh himſelfe in Ganges (which runneth by Bengala) nor in Ganga (which watereth the land of Oriſſa) before he hath paid tole to the king. The king himſelfe is now inforced to buie this water, cauſing it to be brought vnto him by long iourneies, vpon a ſuperſtitious cuſtome, either to bathe or purge himſelfe therein. He is abſolute lord of the bodies and goods of his ſubiects, which he ſhareth to himſelfe & his captaines, leauing the people nothing but their hands and labor:

of

of lands the king hath three parts, and his captaines the reſidue. Whereupon ſithence all theſe barbarous princes maintaine not peace and iuſtice, as arches whereupon to laie the groundworke of their eſtates, but armes, conqueſt and the nurſerie of a continuall ſoldierie, it muſt needes follow that they are able to leuie greater troupes of horſe and foote then otherwiſe wee were bound to beleeue. But to induce ſome meaſure of credit, let vs compare the abilities of ſome Chriſtian princes, with theirs. If the king of France were abſolute Lord of all the lands and profits of his whole dominion (as theſe men are) it is thought that his yeerely reuenues would amount to 15. millions, and yet therein are neither mines of gold nor ſiluer. The clergie receiueth ſixe millions, the kings demeſnes amount to one and an halfe, the reſidue is theirs who haue the inheritance, and yet the peazants liue wel here, in comparison of the villagois of India, Polonia and Lithuania. Beſides this the king hath eight millions of ordinarie reuenue, ariſing of cuſtomes and eſcheats. How mightie a prince would he be, if he were landlord of the demeſnes and rents of the whole kingdome, and ſhould imploy them vpon the maintenance of ſoldiers, as doth the king of Narſinga? Surely whereas now the kings reuenues doe hardly ſuffice for the maintenance of fower thouſand men at armes, and ſix thouſand croſbowes; if this allowance were added to the former, he might as eaſily maintaine 150. thouſand.

To returne to Narſinga: the king to ſee that his captaines performe their duties, once a yeere proclaimeth a muſter, whereat they dare not but be preſent. At the muſter day thoſe who haue preſented their companies defectiue either in number or furniture, are ſure to be raſſed: but thoſe who bring their companies complete and well armed, he honoureth and aduanceth.

What forces may be gathered out of ſo ample a dominion (armed after their manner, as aforeſaid) you ſhall gather by that which *Iohn Barros* writeth of the armie which king *Chriſmarao* led againſt *Idalcan* in the iournie of Raciel. Theſe are his words verbatim. Vnder ſundry captaines the armie was diuided into many battailions: In the vantgard marched *Camaraique* Forces.

raique with one thousand horse, 17. elephants and 30. thousand footmen. *Tiarabicar*, with two thousand horse, twentie elephants, and fiftie thousand footemen. *Timaipanaique*, with three thousand horsemen, and 56. thousand footemen. After them followed *Hadainaique* with fiue thousand horsemen, fiftie elephants, and one hundred thousand footemen. *Condomara*, with six thousand horse, sixtie elephants, 120. thousand footemen. *Comora*, with 250. horse, fortie elephants, and 80. thousand footemen. *Gendua*, with one thousand horse, ten elephants, and thirtie thousand footemen. In the rereward were two eunuches with 1000. horse, 15. elephants, and forty thousand footemen. *Betel* one of the kings pages led 200. horse, twentie elephants, and eight thousand foote. After all these followed the king with his garde of sixe thousand horsemen, three hundred elephants, and fortie thousand footemen. Vpon the flanks of this battell went the gouernor of the citie of Bengapor with diuers captaines, vnder whose colours were 4200. horse, 25. elephants, and sixtie thousand footemen seruing for wages. Vpon the head of the battell ranged 200. thousande horsemen in small troupes, like our vantcurrers, in such sort and order scowring the countrie, before, behinde, and on all sides, that no noueltie could so suddenly happen, but notice thereof was giuen at the Imperiall tent in a moment. Twelue thousand carriers of water, and twenty thousand light huswifes followed this armie. The number of lackies, merchants, artificers, scullions (they call them Maniati) oxen, buffals, and carriage beasts, was infinite. When the armie was to passe any riuer knee-deepe before the foremost were passed, there was scant remaining sufficient for the latter whereof to drinke. Before this iourney the king sacrificed in nine daies 20736. head of liuing creatures, as well of birds as beasts, the flesh whereof in honor of his idols, was giuen to the poore. The soldiers were clothed in garments of cotten wooll so close and hard quilted, that they would beare out the thrust of a lance or sword. Euery elephant was trimmed in a couering of cotten wooll, with a frame on his backe bearing fower men. To their tusks were fastned long & broad swords, to cut in sunder whatsoeuer stoode in their way. The footemen were armed with

with bowes, iauelins, ſwords and bucklers. Theſe laſt the better to couer their whole bodies, and to manage their heauie bucklers carried no offenſiue weapons. In the fight when the king perceiued *Idalcan* by the furie of his great ordinance to make hauocke of his men, and diſmay the reſidue, leaping into the head of the battell, is reported to vſe this prince-beſeeming incouragement: Beleeue me, my companions, *Idalcan* ſhall rather boaſt that he hath ſlaine, then ouercome a king of Narſinga. With which words and enſample his ſoldiers all inflamed, and aſhamed of their cowardize, with a furious charge broke the enemies aray, and put *Idalcan* to flight. Amongſt other ſpoiles they tooke fower thouſand Arabian horſes, one hundred elephants, fower hundred great peeces, beſides ſmal. The number of oxen, buffals, tents and priſoners was ineſtimable. With *Idalcan* were fortie Portugals, with the king of Narſinga twentie. In his raigne two of his captaines rebelled; *Virapanai* vſurped Negapatan, and *Veneapatir* the territorie adioining to Matipura.

Calecute.

THe moſt noble part of India is that which lieth betweene the mountaine Gate and the Indian Ocean. It ſtretcheth from Cape Comerin to the riuer Cangierecor, three hundred miles long. In this prouince raigneth the king of Calecut, who though he may not be cõpared to the princes aboue ſpoken of, for number and power, yet for pleaſant & plentiful ſcituation, he may be ſaide far to ſurpaſſe them. For the region is ſo cut (as it were) into many parcels, ſometime by creekes of the ſea, ſometime by riuers, and ſometime by lakes, that nature (as it ſhould ſeeme) would haue it diuided into ſeuerall prouinces, as Trauancor, Colan, Cochin, Crangonor, Calecute, Tauo and Canonor. Seuen yeeres agone *Pereimal* king of all Malabar ruled theſe prouinces, who after he became a Mahumetan, and reſolued to trauell to Meca, there to ſpend the remnant of his daies, diuided the land into

raique with one thouſand horſe, 17. elephants and 30. thouſand footmen. *Tiarabicar*, with two thouſand horſe, twentie elephants, and fiftie thouſand footemen. *Timaipanaique*, with three thouſand horſemen, and 56. thouſand footemen. After them followed *Hadainaique* with fiue thouſand horſemen, fiftie elephants, and one hundred thouſand footemen. *Condomara*, with ſix thouſand horſe, ſixtie elephants, 120. thouſand footemen. *Comora*, with 250. horſe, fortie elephants, and 80. thouſand footemen. *Gendua*, with one thouſand horſe, ten elephants, and thirtie thouſand footemen. In the rereward were two eunuches with 1000. horſe, 15. elephants, and forty thouſand footemen. *Betel* one of the kings pages led 200. horſe, twentie elephants, and eight thouſand foote. After all theſe followed the king with his garde of ſixe thouſand horſemen, three hundred elephants, and fortie thouſand footemen. Vpon the flanks of this battell went the gouernor of the citie of Bengapor with diuers captaines, vnder whoſe colours were 4200. horſe, 25. elephants, and ſixtie thouſand footemen ſeruing for wages. Vpon the head of the battell ranged 200. thouſande horſemen in ſmall troupes, like our vantcurrers, in ſuch ſort and order ſcowring the countrie, before, behinde, and on all ſides, that no noueltie could ſo ſuddenly happen, but notice thereof was giuen at the Imperiall tent in a moment. Twelue thouſand carriers of water, and twenty thouſand light huſwifes followed this armie. The number of lackies, merchants, artificers, ſcullions (they call them Maniati) oxen, buffals, and carriage beaſts, was infinite. When the armie was to paſſe any riuer knee-deepe before the foremoſt were paſſed, there was ſcant remaining ſufficient for the latter whereof to drinke. Before this iourney the king ſacrificed in nine daies 20736. head of liuing creatures, as well of birds as beaſts, the fleſh whereof in honor of his idols, was giuen to the poore. The ſoldiers were clothed in garments of cotten wooll ſo cloſe and hard quilted, that they would beare out the thruſt of a lance or ſword. Euery elephant was trimmed in a couering of cotten wooll, with a frame on his backe bearing fower men. To their tusks were faſtned long & broad ſwords, to cut in ſunder whatſoeuer ſtoode in their way. The footemen were armed

with

with bowes, iauelins, ſwords and bucklers. Theſe laſt the better to couer their whole bodies, and to manage their heauie bucklers carried no offenſiue weapons. In the fight when the king perceiued *Idalcan* by the furie of his great ordinance to make hauocke of his men, and diſmay the reſidue, leaping into the head of the battell, is reported to vſe this prince-beſeeming incouragement: Beleeue me, my companions, *Idalcan* ſhall rather boaſt that he hath ſlaine, then ouercome a king of Narſinga. With which words and enſample his ſoldiers all inflamed, and aſhamed of their cowardize, with a furious charge broke the enemies aray, and put *Idalcan* to flight. Amongſt other ſpoiles they tooke fower thouſand Arabian horſes, one hundred elephants, fower hundred great peeces, beſides ſmal. The number of oxen, buffals, tents and priſoners was ineſtimable. With *Idalcan* were fortie Portugals, with the king of Narſinga twentie. In his raigne two of his captaines rebelled; *Virapanai* vſurped Negapatan, and *Veneapatir* the territorie adioining to Matipura.

Calecute.

THe moſt noble part of India is that which lieth betweene the mountaine Gate and the Indian Ocean. It ſtretcheth from Cape Comerin to the riuer Cangierecor, three hundred miles long. In this prouince raigneth the king of Calecut, who though he may not be cõpared to the princes aboue ſpoken of, for number and power, yet for pleaſant & plentiful ſcituation, he may be ſaide far to ſurpaſſe them. For the region is ſo cut (as it were) into many parcels, ſometime by creekes of the ſea, ſometime by riuers, and ſometime by lakes, that nature (as it ſhould ſeeme) would haue it diuided into ſeuerall prouinces, as Trauancor, Colan, Cochin, Crangonor, Calecute, Tauo and Canonor. Seuen yeeres agone *Pereimal* king of all Malabar ruled theſe prouinces, who after he became a Mahumetan, and reſolued to trauell to Meca, there to ſpend the remnant of his daies, diuided the land into

many principalities, but with this prouiſo, that all ſoueraigne authoritie ſhould reſt in the king of Calecute, with the title of Samori, which ſignifieth Emperor, or as ſome write, God on earth. Although the reputation of this king be much eclipſed by the Portugals, partly by diuerſion of traffike from his countries, and partlie by aſſiſting his rebels and vaſſals (the kings of Tauor and Cochin) and though his title of Samori be little regarded, yet remaineth hee his woonted maieſtie in verie good ſort amongſt the Barbarians. Calecute is 25. leagues long: Malabar in the broadeſt place exceedeth not ten.

The citie of Calecute (from whence the prouince taketh his name) is three miles long, ſcituated vpon the ſea ſide. It containeth but few houſes, and thoſe of little woorth, not aboue ten, fifteene, or twenty nobles rent by yeere, which is the common rent of all the houſing of the Eaſt Indies, if the Arabians or Portugals be not dealers therein. The inhabitants liue vpon rice, paſmito, cattell and fiſh. Their riches conſiſt in ginger and pepper, which draweth yeerely a great maſſe of treaſure into the hauens of this kingdome. The Arabians were Lords of this traffike for many ages, till the Portugals ſetting light by the incredible dangers of a long nauigation, arriued there not aboue 100. yeeres ſince, and bartred their wares for pepper and other commodities of the land. And as the Portugals enriched the townes of Cochin, ſo did the Arabians Calecute and that kingdome. For this commoditie is of ſuch conſequence, that it not onely enricheth the prince with preſents and cuſtomes, but in ſuch ſort augmenteth the ſtate of the merchants, that ſome of them are comparable to many dukes in Europe and kings in Afrike.

In their wars in Malabar they vſe not the ſeruice of horſe, not onely for that the climate breedeth none, (for thoſe that they haue are brought out of Perſia and Arabia) but for that the nature of the countrey is not fit for horſemanſhip. For as in Sweuia the footemen vſe no pikes, and the horſemen no launces for the thicknes of the woods, which maketh them vnſeruiceable, ſo in Malabar becauſe of the ſtreights, riuers of the ſea, and mariſhes, they ſeldome vſe horſes, ſo that all their

their forces consist in shipping and footemen. It is strange to see how readie the soldier of this countrie is at his weapon; they are all gentlemen, and termed Naires. At seuen yeeres of age they are put to schoole to learne the vse of their weapons, where to make them nimble and actiue, their sinewes and ioints are stretched by skilfull fellowes, and annointed with the oile of Sesamus: by this annointing they become so light and nimble, that they well winde and turne their bodies, as if they had no bones, casting them forward, backeward, heigh and low, euen to the astonishment of the beholders. Their continuall delight is in their weapon, perswading themselues that no nation goeth beyond them in skill and dexteritie. Euery one inureth himselfe to that weapon, whereto he findeth his bodie most agreeable. Their ancient weapons were the Iauelin, the bowe, and the sword; but after the comming of the Portugals, they learned so exactly the mixture of mettals, the casting of great ordinance, and the practise thereof, that (some say) their artillerie and powder surpasseth ours. They go to the warre all naked saue their priuities, neither vse they head peeces, which is the reason that in fights and skirmishes they shew exceeding agilitie, charging and retiring more like falcons then soldiers. When a man would take them to be far off, he shal see them houering round about him in a trice, so that it is as dangerous to follow them flying, as to deale with them fighting. They are swift as leopards, and their flight as much to be feared, as their charge. If they come to handstrokes (which they will not do but vpon necessitie or aduantage) they vse altogither to strike with the point. They binde copper or siluer shingles to the hilts of their swords, the sound whereof in steed of drums and trumpets encourageth them to the encountre. They will lie so close vnder their bucklers, that you shall not see any part of their bodies lie open to danger. There are one kind of Nairs (called Amochi) which accurse themselues, their kinred and posteritie with most bitter execrations; if they leaue iniuries done to their society vnreuenged. If their king happen to be slaine, so much the more furious runne they through fire, water, and assured destruction to reuenge his death. And therefore the kings of India

ſuppoſe their eſtates weake or ſtrong, as they perceiue the numbers of thoſe Amochi to be few or many. By the lawe of the countrey they may not marrie, but they are all allowed women in common. They maintaine thoſe women very well according to their birth and degrees. They muſt be al gentlewomen, for the Nairs may not take any countriewomen, yea ſo great is their diſdaine and pride, that without ill vſage they will not indure anie of the common people to come neere them. In their iourneies they ſend their ſeruants before to the Innes & villages to declare their maſters approch: then muſt all trauellers depart and giue roome. If it be thought in Turkie, that by licentious libertie in time of peace, the Ianizars become more hardie and couragious in warre: what may we deeme of theſe Nairs, who wil not indure a man of meane calling to looke them in the face? They inhabite no townes, but dwell in houſes made of earth enuironed with hedges and woods, and their waies as intriuate as into a labornth.

Forces. Of what force this kingdome is, may be gathered by the armie of ſixtie thouſand ſoldiers, and two hundred veſſels of warre, which he leuied 1503. againſt *Eward Pachecho* the king of Portugals captaine, taking part that time with the king of Cochin: this war laſted almoſt fiue monethes. In the yeere 1529. with an armie of one hundred thouſand he belegered the fortreſſe which the Portugals built in Calecute, vnder the keeping of *Iohn Lima*. In this ſiege he ſpent a whole winter, wherein although the Portugals behaued themſelues very valiantly; yet weighing the kings forces and their owne poſſibilities, they thought it beſt to deſtroy it with their owne hands. In the yeere 1561. he beſieged Ciale with 90. thouſand men, & tooke it by compoſition. He hath more then once giuen an inſtance of his power at ſea. He is Lord of manie hauens, whereunto great numbers of ſhipping doe reſort, and in that regarde, cannot chooſe but be well furniſhed with a great nauie. But in goodnes of ſhipping and martiall diſcipline we muſt needes confeſſe the ſea-forces of all the Indian princes to be far inferior to thoſe of the Portugals; whoſe dominion (both at ſea and land) nothing hath ſo much augmented, as their defenſiue warfare. To ſpeake truth, it ſeldome falleth

falleth out, but the naked man feareth the ſworde, and the armed more incouraged thereby, bearing himſelfe bolder vpon his skill then his ſtrength, and preuailing more by temporizing, then in ioyning foote to foote by raſh fighting, whereas the Barbarians putting more confidence in their numbers then goodnes, haue alwaies wanted that vertue, which ſhould make armies dreadfull and fortunate, and that is good order and warlike diſcipline.

The kingdome of Perſia.

PErſia, and the Perſian glorie hath beene often obſcured, firſt by the Arabians (who to bury in obliuion the memorie of their former reputation, enacted by law that they ſhould no more be called Perſians, but Saracens:) then by the Tartarians lead by Chingis, and laſtly by *Tamerlan* and his followers. But not long before our times by the vertue of *Iſmaell Sophy* (of whoſe originall and fortunes for the better vnderſtanding of the ſtate and hiſtorie of Perſia, it ſhall not bee amiſſe to deuiſe) the kingdome regained his ancient ſplendor. When *Mahumet*, after the deceaſe of his firſt wife (who adopted him her heire) by her riches and his newe ſuperſtition had gotten him a name amongſt the vulgar, hee married for his ſecond wife *Aiſſa* the daughter of one *Abubacer*, a great rich man, and of high authoritie in thoſe quarters. By this mans countenance, and the friendſhip of *Omar* and *Ottomar* his kinſemen, he gathered togither a great rable of Arabians, and partly by faire meanes, & partly by colour of religion, he became maſter of many of the bordering townes: and about the ſame time gaue *Fatime* his daughter by his firſt wife to *Haly* his coſin; and to him after his death, all his earthly ſubſtance, making him the head of his ſuperſtition, with the title of *Caliph*. *Abubacer*, by whoſe countenance *Mahumet* became gracious, taking in ill part the preferment of the yoong man, by the aide of *Omar* and *Ottomar* (whoſe deſires were in hope of

of succession by reason of the old mans yeeres, and for kinreds sake, rather to see *Abubacer* then *Haly Caliph*) began openly to resist *Haly*, and to spoile him and his wife *Fatime* of all the substance which was left him by his vncle. *Abubacer* died: *Omar* and *Ottomar* succeeded. *Omar* was slaine by a slaue; *Ottomar* in a priuate quarrel: after whose decease *Haly* succeeded. Against him rose *Mauie*, who accusing him as accessarie to the death of *Ottomar* his Lord, caused him to be slaine neere Cafe, a city within two daies iourney of Babylon, where likewise he lieth buried. The place is called to this day Massadall, that is, the house of *Haly*. After his decease the inhabitants of Cafe proclaimed *Ossan* the son of *Fatima Caliph*, but him likewise *Mauie* resisted, and slew by poyson. Then was he absolute *Caliph*, and after him his sonne *Iazit*. *Ossan* left behinde him twelue sonnes, one whereof was called *Mahumet Mahadin*. The Moores say he neuer died, but that hee shall returne againe to conuert the world, and therefore they keepe alwaies ready in the mosque of Massadella, a horse gallantly furnished, where in their foppery they affirme that this worlds conuersion shall there first begin. Vpon these differences of *Haly*, *Abubacer*, *Omar*, *Ottomar* & *Mauie*, haue mightie factions of armes and opinions arisen amongst the sectaries of this new superstition. The Persians labour to proue *Haly* true *Caliph* by the last will of *Mahumet*; the Arabians stande as stifly to the three first. When from the yeere of our Lord God 1258. to the yeere 1363. the Moores had no *Caliph* (*Mustapha Mumbala* the last *Caliph* being slaine by *Allacu* king of the Tartarians) a certaine noble man in Persia named *Sophi*, Lord of Ardeuell, deriuing his pedegree from *Haly* by *Musa Ceresin* his nephew, and one of the twelue sonnes of *Ossan*, in memory of whom he altered the forme of the Turbant, by his vertue and valour woone great credite and estimation to his new faction.

To him succeeded *Adar* the sonne of *Guine*, to whom *Assembeg* a powerfull prince in Siria and Persia gaue his daughter in marriage. But his sonne *Iacobbeg* fearing the power and estimation of *Adar*, caused him to be slaine, and deliuered his two sonnes *Ismael* and *Soliman* to his captaine *Auanzar*, willing

willing him to caſt them in priſon in Zaliga (a caſtell in the mountaines:) but *Amanzar* deteſting the tyrannie of his Lord, conueyed the children to his owne houſe, and brought them vp like gentlemen amongſt his owne ſonnes; and falling ſicke of a deadly diſeaſe, forecaſting what might happen after his diſeaſe, gaue them horſes and money, willing them to flie, and to betake themſelues to their mothers houſe and tuition. *Iſmael* the eldeſt was no ſooner returned to his mothers place, but he vowed reuenge for his fathers death, and after ſome fortunate expeditions, tooke vpon him the cauſe and protection of the followers of *Haly*, from whom he deriued his pedegree. Hee made the turbant higher, and ſent Ambaſſadors to all the orientall Mahumetans, to exhort them to vnitie in religion and cogniſances. By theſe meanes and fortune of his armes, he became a terror to the eaſt, and ſlew *Oſſan* then vſurper of the Perſian eſtate with his ten brethren, except *Marabeg*, who ſaued himſelfe and fled to *Soliman* the firſt, Emperor of Turkes, imploring his aide. This *Iſmael* at the lake Vay ouerthrew with a great ſlaughter the Prince of the Tartars Zagatai, and in heat of this victorie had paſſed the riuer Abbian, if his Aſtrologian in whom he greatly truſted, had not foretold him, that his paſſage ſhould be proſperous, but his returne infortunate. He left to his ſonnes a moſt ſpatious Empire, bounded with the Caſpian ſea, the Perſian gulfe, the lake Sioc, the riuers Tygris and Oxus, and the kingdome of Cambaia; which prouinces containe more then twentie degrees from eaſt to weſt, and 18 from north to ſouth. And although theſe kingdomes lying within theſe bounds held not immediatly of the crowne of Perſia, yet all acknowledged the Perſian for their ſoueraigne Prince, that is, the kings of Macran, Patam, Guadel and Ormus. The Georgians did follow their fortunes; ſo did Media, now called Siruan, Dierbechia, once Meſopotamia, Cuſiſtan the habitation of the Suſiani, Farſiſtan the countrey of the Perſians, Straua once Hircania, Pathia at this day called Arac, Caramania now Chermain, Sigeſtan, Caraſſa, Sableſtan, and Iſtigin, whoſe ancient names were Drangia, Bactria, Parapamiſus, Margiana. Of theſe regions, thoſe which lie neereſt to the Perſian ſea are moſt plentifull.

tifull, by reaſon of the riuers euerie where diſperſed through the whole land. Amongſt theſe riuers the moſt famous is Bindimir, to whoſe waters the inhabitants are much beholding, conuaying it by trenches and other inuentions into their grounds, to their great eaſe and commoditie. The prouinces lying vpon the Caſpian ſea, for their riuers and temperature doe likewiſe participate of the ſaid fertilitie, eſpeciallie all thoſe quarters which are watered with the riuer Puly-Malon, falling into the lake Burgian: the reſidue of the prouince is drie, by reaſon whereof townes and villages are ſeldome ſeene in thoſe places, vnleſſe it be by ſome ſpring or waters ſide.

Cities. The moſt ample and magnificent cities of Perſia are Iſtigias the chiefe ſeat of Bactria, thought to be one of the pleaſanteſt cities of the eaſt. Indion, the chiefe ſeat of Margiana, ſcituated in ſo fat and fertill a territoritie, that therefore *Antiochus Soter* cauſed it to bee walled about. Candahar, the chiefe ſeate of Paramiſus, famous for the traffike of India and Cathaio, whither the merchants of thoſe countries do reſort. Eri the chiefe citie of Aria, ſo abounding with roſes, that thereof it ſhould ſeeme to take the name. *Barbarus* ſaith, it is of thirteene miles compaſſe. Iſpaa the chiefe ſeat of Parthia, ſo ſpatious that for the circuite thereof, the Perſians hiperbolically terme it, the halfe world. Chirmain is the chiefe ſeat of Caramania, renowmed for the excellent cloth of gold and ſiluer wrought therein. Eor is a noble citie, and ſo is Cuſtra of Suſiana. But all theſe for beautie and magnificence may bow and bend the knee to Siras ſeated vpon the riuer Bindimire. It was once the chiefe ſeat of Perſia, and as ſome thinke called Perſepolis. *Alexander* the great burnt it to the ground at the intreatie of his Concubine; but afterward being aſhamed of ſo vile an action, cauſed it to be reedefied againe. It is not at this time ſo great as in times paſt; yet it is thought to be one of the greateſt cities of all the Orient, with his ſuburbs contayning twentie miles in compaſſe. It is a prouerbe amongſt the Perſians, *quando Suars erat Siras, tunc Cairus erat eius Pagus:* yet they account it not verie ancient, neither are they of their opinions who will haue it the head of Perſia. Tauris and Caſbin are moſt famous cities; and beſides their magnificence

may

may glory that in them the kings of Perſia keepe their courts.

The forme of gouernment amongſt this nation is not like the gouernment of any other Mahumetan people: neither is there to bee ſeene the like policie in any place through the whole eaſt, as amongſt the Perſians. All the reſt hate nobilitie, and depending vpon the faith and ſeruice of ſlaues doe either murder their brethren, or put out their eies. But amongſt theſe people, nobilitie is honored: the king entreateth his brethren kindly and magnificently, and they allow in their dominions many noble, rich, and mightie Barons, of which ſort there is not one to be found through the whole *Ottoman* dominions. They likewiſe grace gentilitie, and highly eſteeme their ſeruice on horſebacke: they delight in Muſicke and learning, they ſtudie Poeſie, and therein become excellent. They giue their mindes to Aſtrologie: all which good parts the Turkes doe vtterlie reiect and deſpiſe. Merchandize and Mechanicall trades are fauoured in Perſia, and in all kinde of ciuilitie and curteſie excell the Turkiſh. *Gouernment.*

The ſecutity of this ſtate conſiſteth rather in proweſſe then numbers; they maintaine three ſorts of ſoldiers: one ſort the king keepeth in continuall paie, and alwaies about his owne perſon. The ſecond is the Timarotes, (for this kingdome likewiſe as doth the Turke, in lieu of wages allotteth certaine quantities of land to great numbers of horſemen.) The third are Auxiliaries, which ſerue for pay, and thoſe are onely Georgians and Tartarians. To ſpeake of the two firſt (the eſſentiall ſinewes of this king and kingdome) they are all horſemen. For where princes relie onely vpon the valour of the gentrie, there is little regard had of the footemans ſeruice; the like reaſon may be giuen for their want of ſhipping. For although on the one ſide lieth the Caſpian, and on another the Perſian gulfs, yet to this day were they neuer owners of anie warlike ſhipping. If they chance to ſaile vpon the Caſpian (a ſea eight hundred miles long, and ſixe hundred broad) they dare not venter into the maine, but houering by the ſhore, timerouſly ſaile from one place to another. Of the Perſian ſea the Portugals are lords. It aboundeth in mettall of excellent fine tem- *Forces.*

per, especially in the prouince of Cazan. They haue not the vse of artillerie, neither the Arte of defending, besieging, assaulting, mining, or intrenching of fortresses, and all because they want the vse of footemen, to whom these peeces of seruice doe properly belong, as it doth to horsemen to fight in plaine and open field. Besides these wants, they are infested with two other more grieuous mischiefes: and those are ciuill dissentions arising of the greatnes and disloialtie of their Sultans, with the length of iourneies, and the scarcitie of nauigable riuers. Those riuers which they haue are not frequented at all, or at least wise so little, that small ease ariseth thereby. They fall all into the Caspian or Persian seas. The Inland regions are sandie, and vtterly destitute of water. Howe can then the forces of that land make anie commodious or speedie rendeuous when halfe the lande is drie and barren? in so waste a tract not one riuer seruing for nauigable transportation, as doth the Loir in France, Poo in Italie, Vistula in Poland, Sheild in Flanders, and such like in other kingdomes.

There are also many deserts and many mountaines disioyning the prouinces farre in sunder: Heerein it resembleth Spaine, where for want of nauigable riuers (except towards the sea coast) traffike is little vsed, and mountaines and prouinces lie vnmanured for scarcitie of moisture. But nature vnwilling that humane life should want anie easement, hath so prouided for mutuall commerce in these sandie and barren places, that through the labour of camels the want of nauigation is richly recompenced throughout Persia, and the bordering countries. These beastes carrie woonderous burdens, and will longer continue then either horse or mule. They will trauell laden with one thousand pound weight, and will so continue fortie daies and vpward. In sterill and deepe sandie countries (such as are Lybia, Arabia, and Persia) they drinke but once euery fift day, and if extremitie enforce, they wil indure the want of water ten or twelue. When their burdens are off, a little grasse, thornes, or leaues of trees will suffice them. There is no liuing thing lesse chargeable and more laborious, certainly ordained of nature a fit creature for those sandie

ſandie and deepe places of Aſia and Africke, wherein euen man himſelfe feeleth the want of foode and water. Of theſe, there are three ſorts: vpon the leſſer men trauell; the middle ſort haue bunches on their backs fit for carrying of merchandiſe: the greater and ſtronger are thoſe which carry burdens of one thouſand pound weight.

What numbers of horſemen this king is able to leuie, was manifeſted in the warres betweene *Selim* the firſt and *Iſmael*: betweene *Iſmael* and *Soliman*, and betweene *Codabanda* and *Amurath*. Not one of them brought aboue thirtie thouſand horſe into the field, but ſo throughly furniſhed, that they had little cauſe to feare greater numbers. The richer and abler ſort arme themſelues after the manner of our men at armes, the reſidue, being better then the thirde part of their Caualrie content themſelues with a skull, a iacke and cemiter. They vſe the launce and the bow indifferently. Touching their riches, the common opinion is, that in the daies of king *Tamas*, the yeerely reuenues amounted to fower or fiue millions of gold, who by a ſudden doubling of the value of his coine raiſed it to eight, and accordingly made paiment to his ſouldans and ſoldiers. But in theſe daies by the conqueſt of the great Turke they are much diminiſhed, and it is thought that they amount to little more then two millions: but the feodarie landes, towaes and villages (which are very many) ſupply a great part of the pay due to the companies of the horſemen aboue mentioned.

Towards the eaſt bordereth the Mogor, vpon the North the Zagatai. Towards the Weſt the Turke poſſeſſeth a large frontire: vpon the South lieth Ormus, and therein the Portugals. With the Mogors he is little troubled: For as Spaine and France by reaſon of the narrow ſtreights and difficult paſſages ouer the mountaines, cannot eaſily conuey neceſſaries (the life of an armie) to infeſt one another: ſo towards the frontiers of India and Cambaia, prouinces belonging to the Mogors, high mountaines and vaſt deſerts keepe good peace between theſe two princes. Yet infeſt they one another on the borders of Cabul and Sableſtan, of which certaine Lords of the Mogors haue gotten the dominion. He commeth not neere the borders of *Borderers.*

the great Chan, betweene whom certaine petie princes and impatible deſerts doe oppoſe themſelues. It ſeemeth that towards the Zagatai hee ſtandeth content with theſe bounds which the riuer Oxus hath laid out: for he neuer durſt paſſe it; and when *Zuba* king of the Zagatai had paſſed it, he was ouerthrowne with a great ſlaughter by *Iſmael*: So againe was *Cyrus* by *Tomiris*, who ſlue him and all his hoſt. The Turke is a borderer all alongſt the weſterne coaſt of this whole empire, euen from the Caſpian ſea to the gulfe of Saura, a tract almoſt of 15. degrees. He hath no enemie like dangerous to this prince, more to be feared, or of greater power, at whoſe hands in all conflicts (for the moſt part) he hath reaped nothing but loſſe and diſhonor. *Mahumet* the ſecond ouerthrew *Vſſancham*, and tooke from *Dauid* (his vaſſall and confederate) the empire of *Trapezond*. *Selim* the firſt ouerthew *Iſmael* in Campania, and tooke from him Caramit, Orfa, Merdis and all the territorie which they call Alech. *Soliman* put *Tamas* to flight, and tooke from him Babylon and all Meſopotamia. In our daies *Amarab* woon whatſoeuer lieth betweene Derbent and Tauris, wherein is comprehended Georgia and Siruan, and by building of fortreſſes in Teflis, Sumachia, and Eres, aſſured the paſſages of Chars, Tomanis and Lori. He is Lord of all that lieth betweene Erzirum and Orontes, a riuer three daies iourney beyond Tauris. In this citie he cauſed a citadell to be built, not minding to leaue it, as did *Selim* and *Soliman*, but thereby as with a curbe to bridle and keepe it for euer. In this warre which laſted from the yeere 1591. to 1597. the Turks altered their forme of warfare. For whereas they were woont to lay their whole hopes vpon their numbers, the valor of their horſmen and footemen, their ſtore of artillerie, and warlike furniture, ſcorning to be cooped vp in caſtles and fortreſſes, for the moſt part burning whatſoeuer they became Lords of, and little caring to keepe what they had conquered (ſuppoſing it no good policie to ſtrengthen townes by weakning their companies) in theſe warre, to auoide the inconueniences whereinto *Selim* and *Soliman* were plunged, were glad to build ſtrong places vpon commodious paſſages, and citadels in the chiefeſt townes, furniſhing them with good garriſons and great ſtore

of

of artillerie. This warre coſt them very deere: for by ſurpriſes, by famine, and extremities of weather, infinite thouſands periſhed, yet alwaies to the loſſe of the Perſian or his confederates. In the field the Perſian is farre inferior to the Turke in numbers and goodnes of footemen, in ordinance, in all ſorts of warlike furniture, and (the chiefeſt ſtay of a ſtate) in obedience of ſubiects. Notwithſtanding if *Selim*, *Soliman*, or *Aramath* had not been allured either by rebellion or inteſtine diſcords, they durſt not haue medled with this warre. *Selim* was called into the aide of *Marabeg* the ſonne of *Oſſan*, a moſt mightie prince in Perſia. *Soliman* came in aide of *Elcaſo* the brother of *Tamas*, hatefull to his ſoueraigne for his ambition & aſpiring humor, and in the ende abuſed the credit and good will of the people towards *Elcaſo*, to the furtherance of his owne deſſeignes. *Amurath* neuer tooke weapon in hand againſt this people, before he vnderſtoode by the letters of *Muſtafa* Baſſa of Van, that all Perſia was in vprore about the election of a newe prince, thereby certifying him that ſome had choſen *Iſmael*, ſome *Ayner* (both ſonnes of *Tamas*) and that *Periacocona* ſlaying her owne brother *Iſmael*, and betraying *Ayner*, had procured the kingdome to *Mahumet Codobanda*. After this miſchiefe fell thoſe fatall iars betweene *Codobanda* and his ſonne, and betweene the Turcoman nation (a mightie family in Perſia) and the king; a faction no leſſe diſaſtrous to the ſtate of Perſia then the warre of Turkie.

Againſt the Portugals of Ormus, for want of ſea forces he ſtirreth not, and againe for want of land forces the Portugals are not able to moleſt his vpland countries. *Tamas* being counſelled to make a voiage againſt Ormus, asked what commodities the Iland brought foorth, whether corne, cattell, fruite, or what other good thing? When it was anſwered that the ſoile was vtterly barren and deſtitute of all prouiſion, but excellent well ſeated for traffike and nauigation: ſcoffing at the motion, replied, that of this kinde of reuenue he had releaſed vnto his people aboue ninetie thouſand Tomana.

The

The kingdome of Iapan.

IApan may well be called a politike bodie compacted of manie and ſundrie Ilands of diuers different formes and circuits, which as they are diuided from the reſt of the continent, ſo are they inhabited by a people much differing in manners and cuſtomes from the reſidue of the Orient. They ſtande round and cloſe togither like the Maldinæ in the Indian ſea, and the Hebrides and Orchades in the north Ocean. They are in number ſixtie ſixe, diuided into three partialities. The firſt conteineth nine, the ſecond fower, the third fiftie three. Amongſt theſe, fiue are renowmed, but eſpecially one for the famous citie of Macao. And it is moſt commonly ſeene that they who haue the ſoueraigntie of thoſe fiue, are Lords of all the reſt. It is diſtant from newe Spaine 150. leagues; from China 60. The ſoile is to be accounted rather barren then fertile. The inhabitants are of a very ready wit, and marueilous patient in aduerſitie. Their newe borne children they immediately waſh in the riuers, and aſſoone as they are weaned they take them from their mothers, and bring them vp in labours of hunting and ſuch like exerciſes. They go bare headed men and women, as well in foule weather as faire. They are verie ambitious and deſirous of honor. Pouertie is no diſgrace to the Gentrie of their bloud. They will not ſuffer the leaſt wrong to paſſe vnreuenged: they ſalute one another with many curteſies: they are verie ſtaied and of a ſetled reſolution. They are very iealous to ſhew themſelues fearefull or baſe minded in word or deed: they will make no man priuie of their loſſes or misfortunes: they haue the like beaſts both tame and wilde as we haue, but they will ſcarcely eate any thing ſaue herbes, fiſh, barly or rice, and if they doe, it is the fleſh of wilde beaſts taken by hunting. Of theſe graines they make their wines, and water mixt with a certaine precious powder which they vſe, they account a daintie beuerage: they call it Chia. Their buildings

buildings for the moſt part are of timber, partly becauſe the vpland places are deſtitute of quarries, but abounding with cedars of admirable height and thicknes fit for building, and partly becauſe the countrey is very ſubiect to earth quakes. In times paſt all Iapan obeied one prince, ſhewing him great obedience and ſubiection, and this gouernment endured with no leſſe ſtate and maieſtie, at the leaſt 1600 yeeres, vntill about 50. yeeres ſithence by the rebellion of two of his chiefeſt lieutenants, the whole kingdome was diſtracted, each of them holding by armes whatſoeuer he atchieued by vſurpation. By their example others becomming as ambitious, ſeiſed vpon the reſt of the kingdome, ſome on one part, ſome on an other; leauing nothing but the bare name of Dairi, which ſignifieth the Lord of all Iapan, with the title of Iucata. viz. king, to their rightfull ſoueraigne. Yea thoſe princes which were Lords of the territories about Meaco, would hardly allow him whereof to find him victual & apparell, ſo that now he reſembleth the ſhadow rather then the king of the ancient & magnificent Monarchie of Iapan. Sithence thoſe times whoſoeuer laieth holdfaſt on the dominion of the Coquinai (thoſe are the fiue kingdomes bordering vpon Meaco) in ſteed of Dairi, calleth himſelfe Emperour and king of Iapan, and Lord of Tenza. *Nabunanga* was one of them in our daies, and after him *Faſſiba* in power and maieſtie excelling all his predeceſſors. *Nabunanga* was Lord of 36. prouinces, *Faſſiba* at the leaſt of fiftie.

Their forme of gouernment is nothing like the policie of Europe. The ſtrength of the prince conſiſteth not in ordinarie reuenues and loue of the people, but in rigor and the princes pleaſure. Aſſoone as the prince hath conquered one or more kingdomes, he ſhareth them wholy amongſt his friends and followers, who binde themſelues by oath faithfully to ſerue him with a limited companie of men as well in peace as warre. They againe to make their followers truſty and readie for all ſeruices, reſeruing ſome ſmall matter for the ſuſtentation of themſelues and their families, diuide to euery man a portion of the former diuiſion; ſo that all the wealth of Iapan priuate and publike is in the hand of a fewe men, and thoſe

few

few depending vpon the pleasure of one, that is, the Lord of Tenza. He as him listeth, giueth, taketh, disgraceth, honoreth, inricheth, and impouerisheth. When he casseth any gouernor of his prouince, all the leaders and soldiers of the saide prouince are changed, and none left there but artificers and husbandmen. This gouernment draweth with it continuall dislike and innouations. For *Dairy* (though hee hath neither power nor gouernment) yet being in fauour & estimation of the people, ceaseth not to insinuate into their heads, that this Lord of Tenza and the other tyrants, are vsurpers of other mens right, destroyers of the monarchie, and enimies to the state and libertie of Iapan. Which perswasions take so deepe roote in the harts of the people, and so extenuate the reputation of these vsurpers, that vnder colour of suppression of others, they often take armes vpon hope to raise their owne greatnes: so that by this daily change of gouernors, the people not knowing who are their right and natural Lords, know not whom to loue and obey: and againe, their Lords being as vncertaine of their continuance, care not for the people, nor for the welfare of their owne vassals, no more then if they were meere strangers: but alwaies aspiring by the same facilitie whereby they gained one, to conquer a better, after the manner of gamsters, continually hazard one, vpon hope of winning another: in this sort sometime one alone, sometime manie togither vexing the Ilands with perpetuall warfare. *Fassiba* to assure his estate, and disable the great ones from enterprising against him, doth often transport them from one prouince to another, causing them to forgo their ancient inheritances, and to lead their liues amongst vnknowen neighbours: neither in those places will he suffer them to enioy liuings vnited, but farre diuided in peeces and parcels. For all this, they are neuer at peace amongst themselues, by reason that the frontires of their pettie iurisdictions neighbour so neere one vpon another. In these alterations *Fassiba* constrained as well the loosers as the winners to doe him homage and obeisance, and once a yeere to pay him a rich tribute, drawing to his owne coffers the greatest part of the wealth of Iapan by these tyrannies. He keepeth

keepeth his owne people buſied in building of admirable palaces, ſumptuous temples, townes and fortreſſes, the like whereof are no where to beeſeene. In theſe workes he hath more then an hundred thouſand workemen labouring in their ſeuerall occupations at their owne charges. Amongſt the reſt he is now in building a temple, for whoſe Iron workes all the ſtuffe in Iapan wil hardly ſuffice, and therefore he hath giuen commandement to all his people and merchants to bring all their iron and armor into one place.

Beſides the oath of fealtie whereby the reſidue of the kings and princes are bounde to aide and aſſiſt him in peace and warre, he receiueth yeerely two millions ariſing of the profits of rice reſerued vpon his owne poſſeſſions. He was determined after the finiſhing of theſe fabriks, to attempt a iourney into China, and for that enterpriſe cauſed timber ſufficient for the building of two thouſand veſſels for tranſportation to be felled. By theſe magnificent fabriks, this haughtie reſolution, this large dominion and conqueſt of forreine kingdomes, he hopeth to attaine the reputation of immortalitie amongſt his ſubiects, as diuers of his predeceſſors haue done before him. For Amida, Xaca, Canis, and Fotoque, were no other then Lords of Iapan, which either for their glorie in warre, or inuention of ſome good arts in peace, were accounted as gods amongſt the Iaponians, as in the old world *Hercules* and *Bacchus* were amongſt the Græcians, and *Saturne* and *Ianus* amongſt the Italians. Of theſe demi-gods they report as many ſtrange and fabulous inuentions, as the Græcians and Italians did of theirs. But *Faſſiba* vnderſtanding by the preaching of the Ieſuits, that there can be no God but one, who created the heauen and earth of nothing, and all other deities to be fooliſh and deteſtable, determined to baniſh them all, and to weede vp that good vine which began to take deepe roote in thoſe prouinces. Surely this may ſtande for a memorable example of the pride and blindeneſſe of mans hart. The Romane Emperors oppoſed their forces againſt Chriſtian religion, onelie to maintaine and vphold the worſhip of their idols, condemned for vaine and diueliſh by the law of Chriſtianitie: but this man raiſeth perſecution againſt true religi-

on, to arrogate to himselfe the name of God, an imagination (as I saide before) full of extreme ambition and madnes. But in the middest of these proud and vnreasonable cogitations, God raised vp against him a newe enimie from the easterne parts of Iapan, who as we vnderstand by aduisoes of the last
1597. yeere, is likely to giue him his handes and headfull of businesse.

The Xeriffe.

Situation.

AMongst all the potentates of Afrike, I doe not thinke that there can any one be found to excell this prince, either in wealth or power. His dominion conteineth all that tract of Mauritania, which the Romans called Tingitana, and stretcheth from the promontorie Bayador to Tanger, and from the Atlantike Ocean to the riuer Muluia. In which progresse is conteined the best portion of all Afrike, the best inhabited, the pleasantest, the fruitefullest and most ciuill. Heerein amongst others are the famous kingdomes of Fez and Marocho, the one diuided into seuen prouinces, the other into eight. The countrey is diuided into plaines and mountaines. The mountaines are inhabited with a strong and fierce people, rich in pastures and cattell, and possessing a great part of the lesse and bigger Atlas.

Marocho.

Betweene the greater Atlas and the Ocean lieth the plaine countrey, and therein the royall citie of Marocho distant fowerteene miles from Atlas, watered with manie springes, brookes and riuers. In times past this citie conteined one hundred thousand housholdes, and was the chiefest of Afrike, but by little and little is decaied, and nowe lieth more waste then inhabited. In the kingdome of Marocho besides others is Tedsi, a towne of fiue thousand housholds, and Tagoast of eight thousand. Taradant giueth place to none for nobleness and traffike, though for largeness and circuit. It is scituated betweene Atlas and the Ocean in a plaine sixteene miles long, and little lesse broad abounding with

with ſugar and all kinde of prouiſion. The good regard and continuall abode which *Mahumet Xeriffe* made in this place, did greatly augment and innobliſh this towne. Being paſt Atlas you enter into moſt batle plaines, wherein how fruitfull the ſoile is of ſugar, oliues, cattle, and all good things, can hardly be ſpoken.

The kingdome of Fez likewiſe conteineth diuers prouinces excellent well peopled. Amongſt them is Alga, a territorie of fowerſcore miles long, and ſixtie broad: Elabut is 100. miles long, and ſixtie broad. Eriff is a prouince wholy mountanous: therein are ſaid to be three and twentie branches of the mount Atlas, inhabited for the moſt part with ſauage and barbarous people: Caret is drie and rockie, more like Lybia then Barbarie. Nowe becauſe the glorie and maieſtie of this kingdome conſiſteth eſpecially in the citie of Fez, I thinke it not amiſſe to deſcribe the ſcituation thereof. It is diuided into two parts, a little diſtant one from the other, the one called the olde towne, the other the newe. A little riuer likewiſe diuideth the olde into two parts. The eaſt part is called Beleyda, containing fower thouſand houſholds, the weſt part is commonly called old Fez, & hath fowerſcore thouſand and vpward, ſtanding not farre from the new Fez, which likewiſe hath eight thouſand. Old Fez ſtandeth partlie vpon hils, partly on plaines, and hath in it fiftie Mahumetan temples of admirable largeneſſe. All of them haue their fountaines, and pillers of Allablaſter and Iaſper: beſides theſe, there are ſixe hundred of a leſſe ſort: amongſt the which that which is commonly called Carucen is moſt beautifull, builte in the hart of the citie, and containing halfe a mile compaſſe: in bredth it containeth ſeuenteene arches, in length 120. borne vp by 2500. white marble pillars: vnder the chiefeſt arch where the tribunall is kept, hangeth a moſt huge lamp, incompaſſed with 110. leſſe. Vnder the other arches hang very great lampes, in each whereof burne 1500. lights. They ſay in Fes that all theſe lampes were made of the bels which the Arabians brought out of Spaine, who not onely made praie of bels, but of columns, pillars, braſſe, marble, and whatſoeuer was rich and curious, firſt erected by the Ro- *Fez.*

mans, and afterwards by the Gothes. There are in Fes aboue 200. ſchooles of learning, 200. Innes, and 400. water milles, euery one driuen with fower or fiue wheeles. There are alſo diuers Colleges, amongſt the which, that which is called Madarac is accounted for one of the moſt fineſt peeces of workemanſhip throughout all Barbarie. There are likewiſe 600. conduits, from whence almoſt euery houſe is ſerued with water. It were a long labour to deſcribe their Burſe (they call it Alcacer,) it is a place walled about, hauing twelue gates, and diuided into fifteene walkes, where the merchants meete and diſpatch their buſines vnder tents. Their delightſome gardens, and pleaſant parks with the rillets and waters running through them, I can hardly deſcribe.

For the moſt part the king keepeth his court at Fes, wherein he hath a caſtle, palaces and houſes adorned with rare workmanſhip, rich and beautifull euen to his harts deſire. He hath a way vnder ground from the old towne to the new. For the greatnes and ſtatelines thereof by the grant of former kings it enioieth this ſtrange priuiledge: not indure any ſiege, vnleſſe the citizens ſhall thinke their prince for ſtrength and forces able and equall to cope with his enimie: if not, without reproch of treaſon or ignominie, they may yeelde their citie before their enimie approch within halfe a mile of the wals. This haue they done, that ſo goodly and ſo flouriſhing a citie ſhould not ſuffer ſpoile vnder pretext of vnprofitable temporizing.

Fertilitie. It is of no leſſe moment for ſcituation, ſtore of corne, oile, flaxe and cattle, then for pleaſantnes of territorie, and plentie of water. The wals are very ſtrong, and defended with many bulwarkes. The inhabitants are very thriftie, giuen to traffike, and eſpecially to the making of clothes of wooll, ſilke and cotton. The kings eldeſt ſonne is called the prince of Mequinez. Though the kingdome haue no good hauens vpon the Mediterranean ſea, yet greate ſtore of Engliſhmen and Frenchmen reſort to Alarach, Aguer, and other ports in the Ocean, whereof ſome belong to the kingdome of Fes, and other to the kingdome of Marocho. They carrie thither armor and other waies of Europe, which they bartre for ſugar and

and other commodities.

Now how the kingdomes of Fes and Marocho (two seuerall principalities) with their dependances became subiect to one crowne, I think it worthy relation, bicause a more strange and memorable accident hath not happened in our age. About the yeere of our Lord 1508. a certaine Alfaique borne in Tigunedet in the prouince of Dara, began to grow in reputation, a man of a reaching wit, and no lesse ambitious then learned in the Mathematicks. His name was *Mahumet Ben-Amet*, otherwise called Xerif by his owne commandement. This man deriuing his petegree from *Mahumet*, and imboldened by the ciuill wars of Africke, and the differents of the states and common weales thereof (wherein in those daies the Portugals were of no small puissance) began to dreame vpon the conquest of Mauritania Tingitan. Which the better to effect, he first sent his three sons *Abdel*, *Abnet* and *Mahumet* on pilgrimage to Meca and Medina, to visit and worship the sepulchre of their great prophet *Mahumet*. The yoong men returned from this pilgrimage with such opinion and estimation of holines and religion (if it be lawfull to vse these termes to so great impietie and fopperie) that the inhabitants as they trauelled could not be kept from kissing their garments, and adoring them as saints. They againe as men rapt in deep contemplation, iourned through the prouinces sighing and sobbing, & crying with a high voice, Ala, Ala. They had no other sustenance but the almes of the people. Their father receiued them with great ioy and contentment, and perceiuing the fauour and opinion of the people not to be like a woonder of nine daies, but to continue fresh and the same as at first, resolued to make vse thereof, and thereupon sent two of them *Abnet* and *Mahumet* to Fes to the court. The king receiued them kindly, and made one of them president of the most famous college of Amodorac, and the yoonger tutor of his children. In processe of time when they perceiued the king to grace them, and the people to fauour them, by the counsell of their father (taking occasion of the greeuances which the Arabians and Moores seruing vnder the Portugal ensignes had done to the professors of their superstition) they desired leaue

of

of the king to display a banner against the Christians, making him beleeue that they would easily draw the Portugal-Moors to their partie, and so secure the prouinces of Sus, Hea, Ducala, and Maroch. *Muley Nazer* the kings brother resisted this petition, alledging that if once vnder the shew of holines and colour of religion, they grew to a head, it would not afterwards lie in his power to suppresse or range them vnder his obedience againe. For war makes men awlesse, victories insolent, popularitie ambitious and studious of innouation. But the king in whose hart their hypocriticall sanctimonie had taken a deepe impression, little regarding his brothers counsell, gaue them a banner, a drum, and twentie horsemen to accompanie them, with letters of credence to the princes of Arabie and cities of Barbarie. In these beginnings many things falling out to their honor and good liking, they began to make incursions into Dencala and the countie of Safi, ranging as farre as the promontorie Aguer, then vnder the gouernment of the Portugals: and perceiuing themselues to be fauoured, strong and well followed, vrged the people, (who for the most part in those daies liued in libertie) to aide those which fought for their law and religion against the Christians, as likewise with willing mindes to giue God his tithes, which they obtained of the people of Dara. Then by little and little they incroched vpon the territorie of Taradant (of which they made their father gouernor) and inuaded Sus, Hia, Dencala, and the neighbouring places. They first seated themselues in Tedneſt, and afterward in Tesarot. In their next iournie but with the losse of their elder brother, they defeated *Lopes Barriga*, a famous warrior, and captaine generall of the Portugall armie. By faire and flattering speeches they entred Marocho, poisoned the king, and proclaimed *Amet Xerif* king of the countrie. After this happened the warre of the Arabians of Dencala and Xarquia with the Arabians of Garbi, where while ech partie weakened other, and either promised to himselfe the fauour and assistance of the Xerifs: they turning their armes vpon both factions, carried rich praies from both the nations. Before this warre they sent vnto the king the fifth part of all their spoiles: but after this victory little regarding their soueraigne and aduancer

uancer, they ſent him onely ſix horſes and ſix camels, and thoſe very leane and ill ſhapen. Which the king diſdaining, ſent to demand his fifths, as alſo the tribute which the kings of Marocho were accuſtomed to pay him: which if they denied, hee vowed reuenge with fire and ſword. In the meane time the king died, and *Amet* his ſon, once the pupil of the yoonger Xerif, not only allowed, but alſo confirmed *Amet* in the kingdom of Marocho, vpon condition that in ſome things he ſhould acknowledge the king of Fes to be his Lord paramount. To this the Xerifs (whoſe power & eſtimation did daily increaſe) when the day of paiment of the tribute came, willed the meſſenger to ſay vnto his maſter, that they were the lawfull ſucceſſors of *Mahumet*, and therefore that they were bound to pay tribute to no man, yea that they had more right to Africk then he had: but if he would reckon them in the number of his friends, no doubt but it would turne to his good and honor; but if he diuerted them from the warre of the Chriſtians, they would not leaue him ſo much as a hart to defend himſelfe againſt them.

The king taking this in ill part proclaimed warre againſt them, and beſieged Marocho, but for that time was conſtrained to diſlodge. Afterwards returning with 18. thouſand horſmen and two thouſand harquebuſhers to renew the ſiege; as ſoone as he had paſſed the riuer, he was ouercome of the Xeriffes, who led an army of ſeuen thouſand horſe, and one thouſand two hundred ſhot. In the pride of this victorie they exacted tribute of this prouince, & paſſing Atlas they tooke the famous citie Tafilet, and partly by loue, and partly by force compelled diuers people of Numidia and the mountaines to beare the yoke of their ſubiection. In the yeere 1536. the yoonger Xeriffe which called himſelfe king of Sus, gathering together a mightie armie with great ſtore of artillerie, part whereof he tooke from the king of Fez, & part whereof were caſt by certain renegado Frenchmen, made a iournie to Cape Aguer. This place is of great conſequence, & poſſeſſed by the Portugals, who built it and fortified it, firſt at the expences of *Lopez Sequiera*, & then at the charges of king *Emanuel*, after he vnderſtood of the commodious ſcituation thereof. It was fiercely

fiercely assaulted, and as valiantly defended, vntill the fire began to take holde vpon the bulwarke wherein their prouision of gunpowder was stowed, with which misfortune the companies appointed for the defence of that quarter, growing fearefull and faint-harted, gaue way for the Xeriffe to enter the place, who made slaues of the greatest part of the defendants. After which victorie they subdued almost all Atlas, the kingdome of Marocho, and the Arabians which were vassals to the crowne of Portugall: the residue, as Safi, Azamor, Arzil, and Alcazar (places scituated vpon the sea coast of Mauritania) king *Iohn* the third perceiuing the profite not to equalize the charge, voluntarily resigned. These prosperous beginnings brought foorth sower endings: for the brethren falling at discord and dissention, twice put their fortunes vpon the hazard of a battell, and twice the yoonger ouercame the elder, tooke him, and cast him in prison in the citie Tafilet. Then turned hee his armes against the king of Fes, tooke him prisoner, and restored him to his libertie: but taking him againe, for breach of couenants, he depriued him and his sonne of life and kingdome. By the valour of his sonnes he tooke the citie of Tremissen. But *Sal-Aries* viceroy of Algier being iealous of these good fortunes, gathered a puissant host, recouered Tremissen, put the Xeriffe to flight, tooke Fes, and bestowed it with the territorie vpon the Lord of Velez, who afterward in a battell against the Xeriffe lost both life and kingdome. At last in his iournie to Taradant by the subornation of the viceroy of Algier he was murdered in his tent by certaine Turks, who with their captaine *Assen* comming to Taradant, rifled the kings treasures, but were all slaine (except fiue) by the inhabitants in their iournie homewards. This came to passe 1557. when *Muley Abdala* the Xeriffes sonne was proclaimed king. Let this suffice for the originall of the Xeriffe: now let vs see how these risings were like the fortunes of *Ismael* king of Persia. Both of them in small time conquered many prouinces: both grew great by the ruine of their neighbours: both suffered great crosses by the armes of the Turkes, and to them lost part of their dominions. *Selim* tooke from *Ismael* Caramit,

and

and diuers other cities of Meſopotamia, the viceroy of Algier droue the Xeriffe from Tremiſſen and the adiacent territorie. *Selim* woon Tauris the chiefe ſeate of Perſia, and then gaue it ouer: *Sal-Aries* tooke Fes the head citie of Mauritania, and left it when he had done.

This potentate is abſolute Lord of the bodies and goods of his ſubiects: whatſoeuer impoſitions he layeth vpon them, they dare not repine at. For tribute he taketh the tenth, and the firſt fruits of their fruits and cattell: yet is it moſt true that for firſt fruits he taketh not aboue one in twentie, and though it exceede that number, euen to one hundred, yet he neuer taketh aboue two. Of euery acre of land he taketh a ducat and the fift part, and ſo much of euery houſhold and of euery pole male and female aboue 15. yeeres of age, yeerely. If he want, he taketh a greater ſumme. To make the people more willing to pay what is impoſed, he alwaies demandeth more by halfe then is to be paid, that ſo, by paying their due, they may think they are wel dealt withall, in ſeeming to be forgiuen ſomewhat of his full demand. The inhabitants of the mountaines, a people ſauage and vnciuill, for the difficult acceſſe vnto them, he cannot inforce to pay tribute, but thoſe that manure the plaines he conſtraineth to giue the tenth of their harueſt. Beſides theſe reuenues, he taketh tole and cuſtome of all kindes of merchandize in cities: inward, of a citizen two in the hundred, of a ſtranger, ten. His rent of mils is a great matter: for vpon euery aſſe-load of graine grineded in Fes, he taketh halfe a riall: in this towne there are aboue 400. mils. The church of Carruuen was indowed with fower ſcore thouſand ducats of yeerely reuenue, the colleges and monaſteries of Fes with much more; all which now are eſcheated into the kings cofers. Moreouer he is heire to all the Iudges (which they call Alcaids) and hath the beſtowing of all their offices. When they die he ſeiſeth vpon all their horſes, armour, apparell, and all their other chattels. If the inteſtate leaue children behind him fit for the warre, he beſtoweth their fathers annuitie vpon them; if they be ſons & yoong, he nurſeth them till they come to ful yeeres; if daughters, he maintaineth them, till they find husbands. To be fingring the wealth of the richer ſort, he hath

Gouern-ment.

alwaies some office or lieutenantship with an annuitie to sell them: but commonly to preuent those sales, they will not be acknowne of their abilities, remouing their abodes far from the court and the kings sight, which is the cause that the citie of Fez is much fallen from the ancient splendour.

Forces. He hath no castles or peeces well fortified, but only Aguer, Labace, and Tetuan vpon the sea side. His chiefest confidence is in the valour of his soldiers, especially his horsemen, like the Turke and Persian. In this regard he taketh no great care to furnish himselfe with ordinance, yet hath he great store thereof in Fez, Marocho, Taradant, & in the foresaid hauen townes taken from the Portugals and others. As he seeth occasion he causeth new to be cast, for which seruice he can want no workmen out of Europe. In Marocho he hath an Arsenall, wherein he laieth vp monethly at least 46. quintals of gunpowder. Heere he causeth his harquebushes and bowes to be likewise made. In the yeere 1569. by fire which happened amongst the gunpowder houses the greatest part of the city was very much defaced.

His soldierie is of diuers sorts: the first consisteth of 2700. horsemen, and 2000. harquebushers, part lying in garrison in Fez, and part in Marocho, where lieth the court. The second consisteth (as a man may say) of a royall troupe of sixe thousand horse, all Gentlemen pentioners and of great reputation. These ride vpon braue horses with rich caparisons; their armes and furniture shining with golde, siluer, stones and all things else, which for variety of colours or rich deuises may delight the eie with gallant shew, or feede the humour of the curious beholder. To these seruitours besides their allowance of corne, prouender, butter and flesh for themselues, their wiues, children and seruants, they receiue yeerely from seuentie to one hundred ounces of siluer. The third sort are a kinde of Tamarots: for the *Xeriffe* doth alot a certaine portion of lande and tenants to his sonnes, brethren, and men of qualitie amongst the people of Afrike and Arabia, for the maintenance of their degrees. Those whom they terme Alcaids, looke to the manuring of the fields, gather the rents of corne, rice, oates, oyle, butter, flesh, poultrie, and money, and distribute

diſtribute it monethly amongſt the ſoldiers, to euery man according to his place. They likewiſe giue them wollen, linnen, and ſilke for their garments: armor, and horſes for ſeruice. If their horſes chance to be ſlaine, they giue them new: ſo did the Romanes to thoſe which ſerued vpon the horſes of the ſtate. The commanders of theſe troupes are verie carefull to ſee their ſoldiers in hart and full of life, excellent well armed, and competently attired. They receiue betweene fower & twentie and thirtie ounces of ſiluer yeerely. The fourth ſort make the Arabians, who commonly liue in tents, diuided by 120. vnder their ſeuerall leaders, to be alwaies readie vpon all occaſions. They ſerue on horſebacke, but more like theeues and outlawes then ſoldiers. The fift ſort is like the preſſe of the Chriſtian common-weales. Theſe companies conſiſt of citizens, villagois, and mountaine people. Of theſe men the king maketh no great reckoning, neither doth he willingly arme them for feare of ſedition and innouations, vnleſſe it bee to warre vpon the Chriſtians, wherein he cannot forbid them to ſerue. For vpon remembrance of the ſlaughter of the Moores by the Chriſtians ſpoken of in their Mahometicall legend, the more Chriſtians they ſlaie, the eaſier they thinke ſhall be their paſſage to heauen. Hereupon you ſhall ſee herds of men and women running to this warre, deſiring there to die vpon hope of meriting ſaluation by the ſlaughter of our people. The ſame furie (be it ſpoken to our ſhame) inrageth the Turkes: eſpecially for the propagation of their hereſies you ſhal ſee them more liker people running to the celebration of a marriage feaſt, then to a warre-iourney, hardly induring to ſtay the limited time of the rendeuou. They account them Saints which die with their weapons in their hands; and thoſe moſt vnhappie which depart this world amongſt the teares of their children, and the mournings of their wiues.

By this it may ſufficiently appeere what forces the *Xeriffe* is able to bring to the field, but examples will make it more cleere. *Muley Abdala* belegred Magazan with two hundred thouſand men. He filled the ditch with a mount made of earth, and with his ordinance beat the wall leuell with the ground. But by the proweſſe of the Portugall, and furie of

their mines, he was inforced to raiſe his ſiege and depart. It is certaine, he is not able to hold out any warre aboue three moneths, becauſe the ſoldier liueth vpon his daily allowance of diet and apparell: and when ſuch like prouiſions cannot be conueyed to the place of neceſſitie, without great labour and hazard, it commeth oftentimes to paſſe, that for want of prouiſion the armie is conſtrained to breake and retire. *Moluco* king of Fez, who defeated *Sebaſtian*, had vnder his ſtandard fortie thouſand horſemen, and eight thouſand hired footmen; and with the Arabians & other common ſoldiers it is thought that he is able to leuie ſeuentie thouſand horſe, and a far greater number of foote.

Prester Iohn.

ALthough the ſoueraignetie of this prince be verie magnificent, powerfull and ſpacious; yet in truth doth it nothing anſwere the fame and report of the vulgar. *Horatius Malagutcius* in his diſcourſe *De amplitudine dominiorum huius temporis*, maintaineth it to be larger then the empire of any other potentate, excepting that of the king of Spaine. Truely I muſt needs ſay, that in elder age, by the number of his titles, it may bee conie&tured, that his dominions did ſtretch farre and wide: for hee did intitle himſelfe king of Goiam (which is beyond Nilus) Vangue and Damur, places ſcituated beyond the riuer Zair, whereas at this day he hardly commeth neere the bankes of either riuer; yea *Iohn Baroz* writeth, that the Abeſſines by reaſon of their mountaines betweene them and Nilus, haue little or no knowledge of that riuer. In the center of his kingdome is Barcena: eaſtward it ſtretcheth from Suaquen to the entrance of the red ſea, a tract of 122. leagues, and yet betweene him and that ſea lie infinite mountaines inhabited by Moores, dooing what outrages they liſt vpon that coaſt. Weſtward vpon the bankes of Nilus lie a ridge of mountaines, inhabited by Gentiles, who paie him tribute. Towards the north his

his boundes are to bee limited by an imaginarie line to bee drawne from Suaquen to the head of the Iland Meroe, containing the ſpace of 125. leagues; then making a ſemicircle like a bowe, not too much bended towardes the ſouth, as farre as the kingdome of Adea (in whoſe mountaines the riuer which *Ptolomey* calleth Ratto, ariſeth and falleth into the ſea about Melind) for the ſpace of 250. leagues, it ſtretcheth euen to the frontires of the Gentiles: and from thence turning your imaginarie line, and abutting the ende in the principalitie of Adel (whoſe chiefe citie is Acar in the altitude of nine degrees) you ſhall finde this Empire to containe in compaſſe 672. leagues.* It is diuided into vaſt plains, fertile hillocks, and mountaines though woondrous high, yet fit for tillage, & full of habitation. It is not very well ſtored with wheate, but it bringeth foorth barly, millet, a certaine other graine holeſome and indurable, Indian wheat, and all other kinde of pulſe (as well knowen as vnknowne to vs) in very plentifull manner. They haue vines, but make no wines, vnleſſe it be in the kinges court, or the patriarchs palace, in ſteed whereof they brew a kind of ſharpe beuerage made of the fruite of Tamerind. The orange, lemon, and cedar tree grow wild. They make oile of a certaine fruit which they call Zaua, it is of a good colour, but vnſauorie. The Bees build their hiues euen in their houſes, whereupon ariſeth great quantitie of waxe and honie. Their garments are wouen of cotton wooll. The richer ſort are clothed in ſheepe skins, the gentlemen in caſes of Lions, Tygres, and Linces. Their riches conſiſt in herds of oxen, goates, ſheepe, mules, aſſes, and camels. Of horſes their breed is ſmall, but they haue great ſtore of goodly courſers brought them from Arabia and Egypt. They leaue the foles with the mares not aboue three daies, but put them vnto kine to ſucke and reare vp. They haue hens, geeſe, wilde ſwine, harts, goats, and hares, but no conies, yea and ſuch beaſts, of which we haue not the like, as panthers, lions, elephants, and linces. To ſpeak in a worde: there is no countrey vnder heauen fitter for increaſe of plants and all liuing creatures, but none leſſe helpt by arte or induſtry; for the inhabitants are idle and vnthriftie.

They

They haue flaxe, but make no cloth, they haue ſugar-canes and iron-mines, but knowe not the vſe of either: and as for ſmiths, they feare them as fiends. They haue riuers and ſtreames, yet will they not take the paines in drouths to cut the banks to water their tillage or harten their grounds. Few giue themſelues to hunting or fiſhing, which cauſeth their fields to ſwarme with foule and veniſon, and their riuers with fiſh. But it ſeemeth that the true ground of their idlenes ariſeth from their euill vſage: for the poore people perceiuing their land-lords to pole and pill them, neuer ſowe more then they needs muſt. They keepe no method in their ſpeeches, and to write a letter, many men (and that many dates) muſt lay their wits togither. At meales, they vſe neither cloth, napkin, nor tables. They are vtterly ignorant in phyſicke. The Gentlemen, Burgers, and Plebeians dwell apart, yet may any man riſe to honour by vertue and proweſſe. The firſt borne is heire to all, euen to the vtmoſt farthing. Through the whole land there is not a towne conteining aboue 1600. houſholds, and but few of that quantitie: for, for the moſt part they dwel diſperſed in ſmall villages. They haue no caſtle or fortification, in imitation of the Spartans, maintaining that a countrey ought to be defended by the ſword, and not by ſtrength of earth or ſtone. They barter one thing for another, and to make reckonings euen, they ſupply the want with corne and ſalt. For pepper, frankinſence, myrrhe and ſalt they giue gold, and that by waight: as for ſiluer it is in little requeſt. The greateſt concourſe of people is about the kings court, which neuer ſtaieth long in one place, but is euer in progreſſe, ſometime in one place, ſometime in another, and euer in the open fields vnder tents and pauilions. It is ſaid to containe ten miles in circuit.

His gouernment is tyrannicall: for he intreateth his vaſſals, rich and poore more liker ſlaues then ſubiects; which to do with the greater ſafety, he carrieth himſelfe amongſt them with a certaine holy and Saintlike adoration: for at his bare name they bow their bodies, and touch the earth with their hands. They reuerence his pauillion, yea though he be abſent. In old time they were accuſtomed to ſhew themſelues vnto the

the people but once in three yeeres, but ſithence they are growen leſſe maieſticall, ſhewing themſelues thrice in one yeere, to wit, on Chriſtmas day, on Eaſter day, and Holy Rood day, yea & in theſe times *Panuſius* which now raigneth is become more gracious. When any matter of weight is committed in the princes name to any man be he neuer ſo great, he is to attend his commiſſion ſtarke naked to the middle, neither may he put on his garment without licence. Being called to witneſſe a matter in controuerſie, they hardly ſpeake truth, vnleſſe they ſweare by the life of the king. He giueth and taketh to whom and from whom he pleaſeth, neither dare he from whom he taketh, for his life ſhew a diſcontented countenance. He preſenteth to holy orders, and diſpoſeth at his good pleaſure of the goods of the ſpiritualtie as well as of the laitie. In trauelling he rideth ſhadowed with red curtains, high and deepe incompaſſing him round about. He weareth on his head a crowne, the one halfe wrought of gold, the other of ſiluer, and in his hand he beareth a ſiluer crucifixe. He couereth his face with a piece of watchet taffata, which more or leſſe he lifteth vp and putteth downe, according as he is minded to grace him with whom he talketh. Sometime he ſheweth his whole leg, lifting it without the hangings, then may no man approch but by degrees, and after many curteſies and diuers meſſages paſſing to and fro. No man hath vaſſals but the king, to whom once a yeere they do homage, and proteſt obedience as ſubiects to their liege ſoueraignes. He deriueth his pedegree from *Mileich* the ſonne of *Salomon* and *Saba*. In the raigne of *Candaces* they receiued the Chriſtian faith: and about that time one *Gaſparis* became famous in Æthiopia; from whom after thirteene generations diſcended that *Iohn*, who firſt tooke vpon him the ſirname of *Sanctus*, and left it an hereditarie title to his houſe and ſucceſſors. This man hauing no iſſue of his body, about the time of *Conſtantine* gaue the kingdome to the eldeſt ſonne of his brother *Cauus*, and inueſted the yoonger (*Balthaſar* and *Melchior*) the one with the kingdome of Fatigar, the other with the kingdome of Goiam, and ſo diuided the bloud-royall into three families, the *Gaſpars*, *Balthaſars*, and *Melchiors*. To auoid ſedition and innouation, he made a law that the ſonnes,

ſons, brethren, and neereſt kinred of the Emperor ſhould be kept and ſhut vp in the caſtle of mount Amara, and that they ſhould neither ſucceed in the Empire, nor enioy any honorable eſtate: for which cauſe the Emperors euer ſince haue ſeldome married.

He manureth his owne fields with his owne ſlaues and cattell: who by reaſon they are ſuffered to marrie, and their iſſues remaine in the ſame eſtate of villenage, as doe their fathers; they daily increaſe to infinite multitudes. Euerie man that hath any inheritance, doth likewiſe pay tribute, ſome horſes, ſome oxen, others gold, cotton wooll, or ſuch like commodities. It is thought that he is Lord of infinite treaſures, and to haue ſtorehouſes full of cloth, iewels, and gold. In his letters to the king of Portugall, vpon condition that he would wage warre againſt the Infidels, he offered him a million of gold, and a million of men, with prouiſion according. He is reported to lay vp yeerely in the caſtle of Amara three millions of gold. And true it is, that before the daies of king *Alexander* hee did hoord vp great ſtore of gold in rude and vnwrought maſſes; but no ſuch quantitie, becauſe they know not how to refine it. His reuenues are of three ſorts; the firſt ariſeth of his crowne land: the ſecond of the taxes of his people, who paie euerie man by houſe ſomewhat, beſides the tenth of all that is digged out of their mines: the third, he leuieth of the great Lords, and they giue him the reuenue of any one of their townes (which he will chooſe) ſo he chooſe not that wherein themſelues inhabite. And albeit the Prince be verie rich, yet the people are idle and beggerly; partly becauſe they are intreated as ſlaues, which vſage taketh from any people that courage and alacritie of ſpirit, which ſhould be in men profeſſing armes and vndergoing dangers: and partly becauſe in reſpect of that baſe bond of ſeruile fidelitie, wherewith they are ouerawed to his Maieſtie, they perceiue their hands are faſt bound; through feare whereof they haue no other weapon fit for ſeruice, then a ruſtie headpeece, a skull or curaſſe which the Portugals haue brought thither: ſo that hauing neither fortreſſe to flie vnto, nor weapons to repulſe wrongs, the villages and ſubſtance lie alwaies open to the pray and

ſpoile

ſpoile of whoſoeuer will inuade them. Their offenſiue weapons are certaine darts and arrowes without feathers. They obſerue a Lent of fiftie daies, which by reaſon of their true (or rather ſuperſtitious) abſtinence doth bring their bodies ſo weake and low, that for many daies after they are not able to gather ſtrength to mooue themſelues from one place to another. At which time the Moores watching the opportunitie, inuade their dominions, and carrie away men, women and wealth. *Francis Aluarez* writeth, that he is able to bring into the field an hundred thouſand men: but experience hath manifeſted, that euen in his extremities his numbers were far inferior to that reckoning. He hath knights of the Order dedicated to the protection of Saint *Anthonie*. Euerie gentleman father of three ſonnes (excepting the eldeſt) is bound to giue one to the ſeruice of the king: out of theſe are choſen twelue thouſand horſemen for the guard of his perſon. Their vow and oath is to defend the bounds of the Empire, and to fight againſt the enimies of the Chriſtian faith.

He is affronted with three puiſſant neighbours: the king of Borno, the great Turke, and the king of Adel. The king of Borno is Lord of that countrey, which from Guangula eaſtward ſtretcheth about fiue hundred miles betweene the deſerts of Seth and Barca. In ſcituation it is verie vneuen, ſometime mountainous, and ſometime plaine, the people indifferent ciuill, the countrey reaſonably well inhabited, and in regard of plentie of victuall, ſomewhat reſorted vnto by merchants. Vpon the mountaines dwell neat-herds and ſhepherds, liuing for the moſt part vpon millet, leading a beſtiall life, without religion, and accompanying with one an others wife in common. They know no other names then ſuch as are giuen them for ſome note or marke of their bodie, as blinde, lame, tall, bold, &c. This king is verie puiſſant in people, of whom he exacteth no other tribute then the tenths of the increaſe of their liuelihoods. For exerciſe and inſteed of occupations they giue themſelues to ſteale, to ſlaie their neighbours, and to take them priſoners, and then to barter them for horſes with the merchants of Barbarie. Hee hath vnder him many kingdomes and nations, ſome white ſome blacke. He is *Borderers.*

ſons, brethren, and neereſt kinred of the Emperor ſhould be kept and ſhut vp in the caſtle of mount Amara, and that they ſhould neither ſucceed in the Empire, nor enioy any honorable eſtate: for which cauſe the Emperors euer ſince haue ſeldome married.

He manureth his owne fields with his owne ſlaues and cattell: who by reaſon they are ſuffered to marrie, and their iſſues remaine in the ſame eſtate of villenage, as doe their fathers; they daily increaſe to infinite multitudes. Euerie man that hath any inheritance, doth likewiſe pay tribute, ſome horſes, ſome oxen, others gold, cotton wooll, or ſuch like commodities. It is thought that he is Lord of infinite treaſures, and to haue ſtorehouſes full of cloth, iewels, and gold. In his letters to the king of Portugall, vpon condition that he would wage warre againſt the Infidels, he offered him a million of gold, and a million of men, with prouiſion according. He is reported to lay vp yeerely in the caſtle of Amara three millions of gold. And true it is, that before the daies of king *Alexander* hee did hoord vp great ſtore of gold in rude and vnwrought maſſes; but no ſuch quantitie, becauſe they know not how to refine it. His reuenues are of three ſorts; the firſt ariſeth of his crowne land: the ſecond of the taxes of his people, who paie euerie man by houſe ſomewhat, beſides the tenth of all that is digged out of their mines: the third, he leuieth of the great Lords, and they giue him the reuenue of any one of their townes (which he will chooſe) ſo he chooſe not that wherein themſelues inhabite. And albeit the Prince be verie rich, yet the people are idle and beggerly; partly becauſe they are intreated as ſlaues, which vſage taketh from any people that courage and alacritie of ſpirit, which ſhould be in men profeſſing armes and vndergoing dangers: and partly becauſe in reſpect of that baſe bond of ſeruile fidelitie, wherewith they are ouerawed to his Maieſtie, they perceiue their hands are faſt bound; through feare whereof they haue no other weapon fit for ſeruice, then a ruſtie headpeece, a skull or curaſſe which the Portugals haue brought thither: ſo that hauing neither fortreſſe to flie vnto, nor weapons to repulſe wrongs, the villages and ſubſtance lie alwaies open to the pray and

ſpoile

ſpoile of whoſoeuer will inuade them. Their offenſiue weapons are certaine darts and arrowes without feathers. They obſerue a Lent of fiftie daies, which by reaſon of their true (or rather ſuperſtitious) abſtinence doth bring their bodies ſo weake and low, that for many daies after they are not able to gather ſtrength to mooue themſelues from one place to another. At which time the Moores watching the opportunitie, inuade their dominions, and carrie away men, women and wealth. *Francis Aluarez* writeth, that he is able to bring into the field an hundred thouſand men: but experience hath manifeſted, that euen in his extremities his numbers were far inferior to that reckoning. He hath knights of the Order dedicated to the protection of Saint *Anthonie*. Euerie gentleman father of three ſonnes (excepting the eldeſt) is bound to giue one to the ſeruice of the king: out of theſe are choſen twelue thouſand horſemen for the guard of his perſon. Their vow and oath is to defend the bounds of the Empire, and to fight againſt the enimies of the Chriſtian faith.

He is affronted with three puiſſant neighbours: the king of Borno, the great Turke, and the king of Adel. The king of Borno is Lord of that countrey, which from Guangula eaſtward ſtretcheth about fiue hundred miles betweene the deſerts of Seth and Barca. In ſcituation it is verie vneuen, ſometime mountainous, and ſometime plaine, the people indifferent ciuill, the countrey reaſonably well inhabited, and in regard of plentie of victuall, ſomewhat reſorted vnto by merchants. Vpon the mountaines dwell neat-herds and ſhepherds, liuing for the moſt part vpon millet, leading a beſtiall life, without religion, and accompanying with one an'others wife in common. They know no other names then ſuch as are giuen them for ſome note or marke of their bodie, as blinde, lame, tall, bold, &c. This king is verie puiſſant in people, of whom he exacteth no other tribute then the tenths of the increaſe of their liuelihoods. For exerciſe and inſteed of occupations they giue themſelues to ſteale, to ſlaie their neighbours, and to take them priſoners, and then to barter them for horſes with the merchants of Barbarie. Hee hath vnder him many kingdomes and nations, ſome white ſome blacke. He is *Borderers.*

an heauie enimie to the Abessines, taking away their cattell, rifling their mines, and leading away the people in captiuitie. His horsemen ride after the Spanish manner, armed with lances (steeled at both ends) darts and arrowes: but their inrodes resemble rather robberies and garboiles, then wars managed by valiant soldiers.

The Turke likewise on the east, and the king of Adel on the southeast, do cruelly vexe him: for they haue curtald his large dominion and brought his prouinces into great miserie. In the yeere 1558. the Turke harried the whole territorie of Bernagasso (but since expulsed) and tooke from *Prester Iohn* whatsoeuer he was lord of vpon that sea coast, especially the hauen and citie of Suaquen and Erococo, in which place the mountaines betweene Abex and the red sea, make a gate as it were for the traffique and carriages of the Abessines and Arabians. And sithence that, *Bernangasso* was inforced to submit himself to the Turkish commands, to buie his peace, and in name of a tribute to pay one thousand ounces of gold yeerely.

The king of Adel is his no lesse infestious enimie: he bordereth vpon the kingdome of Fatigar: and his seigniorie stretcheth alongst the red sea as far as Assum, Salir, Meth, Barbora, Pidar and Zeila. Many ships come from Aden and Cambaia to Barbora with merchandise, which they trucke for flesh, honie, waxe and vittail: these commodities are carried to Aden; gold, iuorie, and such wares are sent to Cambaia: the greatest part of vittail, hony, waxe, corne and fruits brought from Zeila, are carried into Aden and Arabia, as likewise much cattell, especially sheepe hauing tailes of 25. pound weight, with heads and necks all blacke, the rest of their bodies all white. Of these cattell there are some altogither white, with turning crooked tailes as long as a mans arme, and dewlaps like oxen. Some of their kine haue hornes with many branches like our deere: othersome haue one horne in their forehead growing backward a span and halfe long. The chiefe citie of this kingdome is Arar 38. leagues distant from Zeila towardes the southeast. He professeth Mahumetisme, and since his conuersion he hath intitled himselfe with the sirname of Holy, auowing continual war against the Abessine Christians: and therefore

fore he watcheth the time of the foreſaid faſt of fiftie daies, when he entreth their territories, burneth their villages, taketh priſoners, and then committeth a thouſand other miſchiefes.

The Abeſſine ſlaues doe often leaue their countrie, and take vpon them great iournies, putting themſelues in the ſeruice of great Lords, where many times by their induſtrie and good carriage they become high commaunders in Arabia, Cambaia, Bengala and Sumatra. For the Mahumetan princes being all tyrants and Lords of thoſe countries, which they haue forced from the Gentils, to ſecure their eſtates doe neuer truſt their home-bred ſubiects, but wage ſtrangers and ſlaues, vnto whoſe fidelitie they commit their perſons and the managing of all the affaires of their kingdomes. And amongſt all ſorts of ſlaues, the Abeſſine is in greateſt eſteeme for his faithfulnes and towardly diſpoſition. The king of Adel ouerlaieth Egypt and Arabia with theſe ſlaues, which hee changeth with the Turks and princes of Arabie, for armour, prouiſion of warre and ſoldiars. In the yeere of our Lord 1500. *Claud* king of Abex perceiuing himſelfe inferior to *Grad-Ameda* king of Adel (for he had vexed his land with 14. yeeres incurſions) forſaking the frontires, retired himſelfe into the inward parts of his kingdome, intreating for aide of *Stephen Gama* viceroy of India vnder *Iohn* the third king of Portugall, who was then in the red ſea with a warlike nauie. In compaſſion of his miſeries and religion, he ſent him fower hundred Portugall-ſhot verie well furniſhed vnder the conduct of *Chriſtopher* his brother, By their aide and vſe of their artillerie he ouerthrew his enimies in two battels: but the king of Adel obtaining of the gouernor of the citie of Zebit one thouſand harquebuſhers, and ten pieces of ordinance, in the third fight put the Portugals to flight, and ſlew their captaine. Afterwards when *Adel* had ſent away theſe Turkes, king *Claudius* ſet vpon him at vnawares by the riuer Zeila and the mountaine Sana with eight thouſand footemen, fiue hundred Abeſſine horſemen, and the remainder of the liuing Portugals, one of whom gaue *Grada-Amada* his deaths wound. But in March 1509. *Claudius* fighting with the Moores of Malaca, gaining the victorie, was

ſlaine in the battell. *Adam* his brother ſucceeded, againſt whom being a demi-Mahumetan, the greateſt part of the Abeſſine Nobilitie rebelled, and was ouerthrowne in the yeere 1562. by *Bernagaſſo*. By this caſualtie did the Æthiopian affaires ebbe and flowe, vntill in the raigne of *Alexander* things began in ſome ſort to returne to their ancient eſtate by the aide of the Portugals, who furniſhed them with weapons both offenſiue and defenſiue, and by their examples incouraged them to bee ſtout and couragious againſt their enimies. All that were liuing after the defeature of *Chriſtopher Gama*, and all that euer went thither ſince that day to this, doe ſtill remaine there, marrying wiues and begetting children. King *Alexander* gaue them leaue to elect a Iuſtices, and to end all matters of controuerſie amongſt themſelues, which maketh them ſo willing to ſtaie and to teach them the vſe of their weapons, the manner of our warfare, and how to fortifie paſſages & places of importance. Sithence thoſe times (*Francis Medices* contracting friendſhip with the Abeſſine) diuers Florentines, ſome for pleaſure and ſome for profite, haue trauelled into thoſe prouinces, wherein when they are once entred, the king intreateth them ſo faire, and giueth them ſo largely whereupon to liue, that they can hardly obtaine licence to returne againe into their owne countries.

Beſides theſe, he hath other enimies, as the king of Dancali, whoſe citie and hauen is Vela vpon the red ſea, and the Moores of Doba, a prouince diuided into foureteene Lieutenantſhips. Theſe people though they are accounted within the limits of the Abeſſine Empire, yet doe they often rebell, hauing a law amongſt themſelues, that no yoong man may contract matrimonie, vnleſſe he can bring good proofe that he hath ſlaine twelue Chriſtians.

Monomotapa.

Monomotapa.

IN the reſidue of the Æthiop raigne diuers powerfull princes, as the kings of Adel, Monomugi, Monomotapa, Angola, and Congo, of which as yet we vnderſtand verie little. But that the Reader by the deſcription of one, may coniecture of the reſt, I will ſpeake ſomewhat of the ſtate and policie of Monomotapa, becauſe it is mightier and more famous then the reſt. This kingdome containeth all that Iland which lieth betweene the riuers of Cuama and Spirito Santo (a territorie of one hundred & fiftie leagues in compaſſe) and from Spirito Santo it ſtretcheth euen to the Cape of Good Hope: for the Vizeroies of that huge tract do acknowledge him for their ſoueraigne and ſupreme gouernour: of towns and villages they haue few, thoſe cottages which they haue conſiſt of timber and thatch. One of their cheife cities is called Zimbas, and other Benemataxa, the one fifteene miles, the other 21. diſtant from Cefala towards the weſt. The ſoile aboundeth with corne & with cattle great and ſmall, wandring by heards through the fields and woods. By the ſtore of teeth from thence tranſported, we may coniecture that leſſe then 5000. elephants cannot but die yeerely in this countrey. Theſe beaſts are heere very great. There is no climate like it for plentie of golde: for by report there are 3000. mines, whereout gold is digged: gold is likewiſe found in the earth, in rocks and riuers. The mines of Manica, Boro, Quiticui, and Toroe (which ſome men call Butua) are the richeſt. The people are meane of ſtature, black, & wel ſet. They conuerſe with the king kneeling on their knees, and to ſit in his preſence, is the vſe with them, as with vs to ſtand, and that is granted but to great lords. The aſſay of meate and drinke is not made before, but after the prince hath eate and drunke. Heere are no priſons, becauſe law paſſeth vpon the offendor in the very moment wherein the offence was committed. The offences moſt ſeuerely puniſhed are witchcraft, theft,

theft, and adulterie. They pay no other tribute but certaine daies worke, and preſents, without the which no man may appeere in the princes preſence. The king beareth in his coat of armes a certaine little ſpade, with an Iuorie handle, and two ſmall darts. Hee keepeth for his faithfulleſt guard two hundred dogs. He keepeth the heires of his vaſſall princes to be ſecured of their parents loyaltie. One of the kings not long ſithence was conuerted and Baptized by *Gonſalua Silua* a Ieſuite, with the greater part of his courtiers, but afterwards (by the perſwaſion of certaine Moores in great credite about him) hee cauſed him to be ſlaine. *Sebaſtian* king of Portugall offended heereat, proclaimed warre againſt him vnder the leading of *Franciſco Baretio*. This armie conſiſted of ſixeteene hundred, the greateſt part gentlemen, to whom the Monomotapa fearing their armes and valour, offered honorable conditions, but the captaine (whom no offer or indifferencie could ſatisfie) was ouercome, and his armie vtterlie conſumed, yet not by the enimie, but by ſicknes and the infectious aire of the countrey.

FINIS.

XUM